1 Some examples of be in the present simple.
   This is my brother. He's ten years old.
   I'm eighteen and a student; these are my books.
   My parents aren't at home; they're at work.

2 Here are the present simple forms of be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>Full form</th>
<th>Short form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I'm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is</td>
<td>he/she/it's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>we are</td>
<td>we're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they are</td>
<td>they're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>Full form</th>
<th>Short form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>I am not</td>
<td>I'm not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are not</td>
<td>you're not or you aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is not</td>
<td>he/she/it's not or he/she/it isn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>we are not</td>
<td>we're not or we aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are not</td>
<td>you're not or you aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they are not</td>
<td>they're not or they aren't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We usually use the short forms in speech.
She's my sister. He's my brother.
I'm from Germany. They're students.

For information on question forms, see p. 4.

Grammar in action

1 We use be when we introduce ourselves and our families:
   These are my sisters and this is my brother.
   I'm Steve; this is my partner, Ruth.
   She's 30 years old but I'm younger.

2 We use be when we talk about our jobs:
   I am a doctor and they are nurses.

3 We use be when we say where we're from:
   I'm from Brazil; my aunt is Portuguese.
   I'm not from England. I'm from Wales.

4 We use be when we talk about the weather:
   It's a beautiful day but it's cold.
   It's not very warm today and it's very windy.

5 We use be when we talk about location:
   Milan is in the north but it isn't near Venice.

We also use be to form continuous tenses.
For more information on the present continuous, see p. 10.

A Introductions

(i) Add the correct forms of be. Use the short form where possible.

I'm 20 and I'm a student. My father is from Brazil. My mother 3 (not) from Brazil. She is Irish. Her parents are from Dublin.
Paul and Simon are my brothers. They are both teachers.
Simon is 23 and Paul is 25, so I'm not the oldest.

(ii) Which use of be in (i) matches these contexts? Choose one example.

0 Age
1 Job
2 Nationality
3 Family
B  Home, nationality and jobs

We're meeting people at a party. What are they saying? Add the correct forms of be. Use the short form where possible.

Paola and Federico are from Naples. Naples is in the south of Italy. Paola is a photographer and Federico is a dentist.

We are artists. We are English. We are from London.

I am a teacher.

This is my husband, Tom. We are from Scotland.

C  The weather and location

It's the first day of a new class. Four students are talking about their countries. Add the correct forms of be or one of the words in the box. Use the pictures to help you.

KUMIKO  Hello. I'm Kumiko. I'm from Tomakomai. It's in the north of Japan.

It's cold in the winter, and it's hot in the summer. Tomakomai is a small town near Sapporo.

GALINA  Hi, I'm Galina. I'm from St. Petersburg. It's in the west of Russia. It's not very hot! In fact, it's very cold in the winter. But sometimes it's sunny! St. Petersburg is not the capital of Russia, of course, but it's a very big city.

ABBAS  I'm Abbas, and this is my cousin, Sulama. We're from Oman. It's a hot country and it's very... well, hot.

SULAMA  We're from two small towns in the south, Salalah and Mirbat. They are by the sea. They are (not) near Muscat, the capital city. Muscat is a thousand kilometres away.
Be: Present simple
Are you hungry?; What time is it?

4 To make questions with be, we put the verb before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 These questions can be answered with yes or no:

- Are you here on holiday? ~ Yes, I am. Is your son a student? ~ No, he’s not.

The answers are short: Yes, I am. No, I’m not.

› For more information on yes/no questions and short answers see unit 12.

6 We can use question words to make questions with be, too:

- What’s your job?
- Where are your friends?
- How old is your brother?

› For more information on question words, see unit 12.

D Asking and answering questions

Ming is a student from Shanghai. This is her first day in London. People ask her questions at the airport and at her new college. First put the words in the right order to make the questions on the left of the page.

0 Is this your suitcase? (your suitcase/this/is) Yes, it is.
1 (a student/you/are) ..........................................
2 (s/your name/what) ..........................................
3 (you/are/how old) ............................................
4 (are/from Hong Kong/you) .................................
5 (your ID card, please/is/where) ............................
6 (what/your address in the UK/5) ............................

Now write these answers in the correct spaces next to the questions above:

Here it is. I’m 22. Yes, I am. Yes, it is. No, I’m from Shanghai. It’s The Hyde Park Hotel, Queensway, London W2 3BJ. It’s Ming Yifeng.

Finally, use a form of be to make the questions that Ming asks at her college and hotel.

0 Is this my new timetable? (this my new timetable)
0 What time is our first class? (our first class)
7 (this your first day here, too)
E  
A holiday conversation

Sally is on holiday in Greece. She meets Liga in a café. Add the word(s) in brackets and a form of be to their conversation. Use capital letters where necessary.

SALLY Hi, I’m Sally. 
LIGA Pleased to meet you. I’m Liga. (you) here on holiday? 
SALLY Yes, it’s a beautiful town, and it’s so sunny here! But I’m sad because it’s my last day. 
LIGA Oh, I’m sorry. Where are you from, Sally? 
SALLY Athenry. It’s a nice little town in Ireland, but it’s not very sunny. And you? 
LIGA I’m from Riga. It’s the capital of Latvia. I’m here with my boyfriend, and this our first day, so we’re happy! 
SALLY You’re lucky! 
WAITER Good morning, ladies. Would you like something to eat? 
SALLY No, I’m not hungry, thanks, but I’d like an orange juice, please. 
LIGA I’m thirsty, too. A lemonade, please. 
SALLY Well, it’s good to meet you, Liga, if only for a day!

F  
At a bus stop

Katie and Asif meet Dieter at a bus stop. After the example, add twenty more positive and two more negative forms of be. Use capital letters where necessary.

ASIF Look at the time. It’s two in the morning. Where are we? 
KATIE On Burley Street, I think. Are you hungry, Asif? 
ASIF No, I’m not hungry, but I’m tired. Where the bus stop? 
KATIE Look, it’s there! Come on! 
(At the bus stop they meet Dieter.) 
ASIF Excuse me. This the bus stop for Rayne’s Park? 
DIETER Yes, I hope so. It’s a cold night. 
KATIE Hi, I’m Katie and this my friend Asif. 
DIETER Pleased to meet you. I’m Dieter. Are you students? 
KATIE No, we’re students. We’re doctors. And you? 
DIETER I’m a waiter at the Hamburger restaurant on Park Street. 
ASIF Where are you from? Are you German? 
DIETER No, I’m Austrian, but I’m in Leicester for six months. It’s an interesting city. 
KATIE Look, the bus here! I hope it’s warm inside. After you, Dieter. Come on, Asif.

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 122.
Present simple
I work; he studies

1 Some examples of the present simple:
I come from France, but I speak English.
She usually phones me at the weekend.
We live in the centre of Beijing.

2 The positive form of the present simple only changes after he/she/it:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I stop</td>
<td>you stop</td>
<td>we stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go</td>
<td>it goes</td>
<td>they stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I carry</td>
<td>he carries</td>
<td>you study -&gt; she studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I eat</td>
<td>she eats</td>
<td>they pay -&gt; he pays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wash</td>
<td>she washes</td>
<td>they miss -&gt; he misses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 The changes after he/she/it:
For most verbs, we add -s:
I eat --- she eats they pay --- he pays
But for verbs ending in -o, -ch, -sh, -ss and -x, we add e before -s:
I go --- it goes
you fix --- she fixes
we watch --- he watches
I wash --- she washes
they miss --- he misses

And for verbs ending in a consonant (b, c, d, etc.) + y, we change the y to ie, and then add -s:
I carry --- he carries

For the verb have, we say 'he/she/it has...':
These spelling rules work for nouns too:
potato -> potatoes
box -> boxes
match -> matches
baby -> babies

4 We use the present simple to talk about ourselves, where we live, and where we work, to talk about our hobbies and timetables, to talk about things we don't like and to talk about things we don't know.

---

For information on present simple negative, see p. 8.

Grammar in action

1 We use the present simple to talk about facts. Here, we're talking about where we live, and where we work:
My parents live in Scotland.
My mum comes from Australia.
My dad works for an American company.

2 We use the present simple to talk about our hobbies, timetables, and things we do regularly:
I sometimes play football on Sunday mornings.
They never go on holiday.
Megan comes to a French class with me on Mondays.

We often put a frequency adverb (usually, sometimes, never, etc.) before the verb, or we give a time, day or period (at 9.30, in the morning, on Tuesdays, at the weekend, in the summer, etc.) after the verb.

---

For information on frequency adverbs, see p. 16.

Talking about where we live and where we work

Joe and his friends share a big house in London. Jean-Paul is going to stay with them. Add the correct form of the verbs in brackets to this letter.

Hi Jean-Paul!

Here's some information about our house. Sally and I live 0 (live) on the first floor. Sally works 0 (work) for a travel company and I drive 1 (drive) a taxi. Paul has 2 (have) a room on our floor, too.

He fixes 3 (fix) cars. Mario lives 4 (live) on the second floor with his wife, Lucia. They come 5 (come) from Italy. Lucia speaks 6 (speak) a little French. I think. They both make 7 (make) great pasta! Finally, Greg 8 (sleep) on the top floor. He teaches 9 (teach) maths in a local school.

See you soon!

Joe
B  Things we do regularly

(i) Here is an interview with Anisha Chetty, the managing director of the supermarket company, Bisco’s. Add the correct verb, changing the form if necessary.

INTERVIEWER  When do you start your day?

ANISHA  My husband sleeps (sleep/stay) until 8 a.m., but I always get (start/get) up at 6.30 a.m. I usually leave/go to the gym first. Then I have/sit breakfast at the London office at 7.30 a.m. I start/stop work at 8 a.m.

INTERVIEWER  Wow! That’s early. Are you the first person to arrive at the office?

ANISHA  No actually. My Personal Assistant, Philip, get/arrives at 7.45 a.m., but he finish/lose work at 3 p.m. to pick up his children from school.

INTERVIEWER  Do you have meetings all day long?

ANISHA  No, not all day. On Wednesdays I fly/catch to Glasgow to visit the Scottish manager, Derek. He give/make me information every week on the eleven Bisco supermarkets in Scotland.

INTERVIEWER  Do you have any time to relax?

ANISHA  Sure. You have to relax. I make/do yoga on Tuesday afternoons. And I try/come to get home early on Friday afternoons.

(ii) Check your answers to (i), and then add the verb in the correct form to these sentences about Anisha.

0 She always gets up at 6.30 a.m.
1 She usually to the gym first.
2 Then she breakfast at the London office.
3 She work at 8 a.m.
4 On Wednesdays she to Glasgow.
5 She yoga on Tuesday afternoons.
6 And she to get home early on Friday afternoons.

C  Facts and regular activities

Gill is showing a family photo to her friend. Cross out the wrong verb forms in the sentences in the first half (1-4), and add them to the sentences in the second half (5-8).

0 My mother make/makes TV programmes.
1 My father work/works in a travel agency.
2 My parents spend/spend two months every year in California.
3 My grandfather speak/speak five languages.
4 He play/play jazz piano at the weekends.
5 My brothers work for a South American bank.
6 They both speak Spanish as well as English.
7 My older brother, Matt, make a lot of money.
8 They both make/tennis together on Sundays.
Present simple
We don't know; he doesn't remember

5 Some examples of the present simple negative:
I don't like music in shops.
She doesn't eat meat.
We do not know the answer.
This train does not stop at York.

6 We make the negative form by using do not/don't or does not/doesn't before the infinitive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE Full form</th>
<th>Short form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do not stop</td>
<td>you don't stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it does not stop</td>
<td>he/she/it doesn't stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do not stop</td>
<td>you don't stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they do not stop</td>
<td>they don't stop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Note that we don't add -s after he/she/it in the negative form: He doesn't stop.
2 In speech and informal writing, we usually use short forms.

Grammar in action

3 We use the present simple to talk about things we like or don't like:
I love sunny days!
I like most classical music.
Mike doesn't like golf.
We want an ice cream!
My dad hates motorbikes.
I don't want another book for my birthday!

4 We use the present simple to talk about things we know or don't know and think or don't think:
I don't know her name. Do you?
Jeremy knows the way to the hotel.
I'm sorry, but I don't understand.
I think it's time to go home.
Jo doesn't think this restaurant is very good.
I understand a few words in French.

For information on present simple questions, see p. 18.

D Sightseeing in Edinburgh

Bob and Jess and their kids, Sam and Mel, are visiting Edinburgh. Add the correct verb in the correct form.

BOB I don't know (not think/not know) where we are, Jess. Mel thinks (think/want) we're on Princes Street - the street with all the shops - but I'm not sure.

SAM I (hate/love) shops! They're boring. I want to go to the zoo.

JESS (not think/not understand) the zoo is in the city centre, Sam. And Mel (not hate/not like) zoos anyway.

BOB Listen. I'm going to ask this man where we are. Excuse me, sir, what is the name of this street?

JESS Bob! He (not understand/not think) you. I don't think he's British.

BOB OK. Sorry, sir. Look, Jess. What's that?

JESS (not know/not understand), Bob.

MEL But I (think/know) what it is! It's the Scott Monument. I read about it at school.

BOB Thanks, Mel. This is Princes Street, then. So now I know the way to the Tourist Information Office.

JESS Great! We can ask for directions to the National Gallery of Scotland.

I (love/hate) paintings!

SAM Well, I (not hate/not like) paintings. They're boring. I'm thirsty.

JESS We can have a drink at the café in the National Gallery, Sam. We may see some paintings of lions or tigers there. That will be nice, won't it?
E  A day in the life of Ling Wang

(i) We use the present simple for facts and regular activities; things we like and don’t like; and things we know and don’t know. In the first part of this magazine article, tick (√) the verb forms if they’re correct. If they’re wrong, cross them out and write the correct forms. This informal magazine uses short forms of the present simple negative.

Ling Wang reads the evening news on a Beijing TV channel. She lives in a beautiful apartment in the centre of the city. She doesn’t get up early. She likes to sleep late, until 10 or 11 a.m. She has three cups of green tea for breakfast. At 11.30 a.m. she goes for a swim in a pool in her apartment block. Then she relaxes until lunchtime.

“Sometimes I meet a friend for lunch,” she says. “We talk about our jobs, and music and films and things. I know a lovely restaurant near my apartment…”

(ii) In the second part, add the verb forms from the box.

understand takes think don’t eat don’t speak
studies arrive don’t meet love

“…We normally arrive there at 1 p.m. I’m a vegetarian, so I don’t eat meat or fish, but I have fresh fruit and vegetables. It’s important to look after your body.”

After lunch, Ling always her language books for an hour. She speaks English and Japanese as well as Chinese. “I one or two words in Spanish, too, but I don’t it,” she says. “I many Spanish people in Beijing!” At 4 p.m. a taxi her to the TV studio.

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 122.
03 Present continuous  
I am waiting; he’s making

1 Some examples of the present continuous:  
Hurry up! Sara and Tom are waiting for us!  
I’m sorry, Matt’s shopping at the moment. Do you want to leave a message for him?  
I don’t like my boss – I’m looking for a new job.

2 Here is the positive form of the present continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>Full form</th>
<th>Short form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>I am waiting</td>
<td>I’m waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are waiting</td>
<td>you’re waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is waiting</td>
<td>he/she/it’s waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>we are waiting</td>
<td>we’re waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are waiting</td>
<td>you’re waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they are waiting</td>
<td>they’re waiting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In speech and informal writing, we usually use the short forms after pronouns. We can use the short form with singular nouns, too:  
He’s eating. The dog’s/dog is eating.

3 To make the -ing form:
For most verbs, we add -ing:

- sleep → sleeping
- work → working

But for verbs ending in -e, we take away the -e first:

- live → living
- make → making

And for these common verbs, we double the final consonant:

- beginning → getting
- shopping → sitting
- travelling → winning
- running → swimming

4 We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening right now and things that are happening around now, but perhaps not at the exact moment of speaking.

Grammar in action

1 We use the present continuous to describe things that are happening now. This is often in an email, on the telephone, or in a radio or TV report:

- I’m sitting at my desk and it’s snowing outside. (in a letter)
- Bob’s watching TV, and Jos’s reading. (in an email)
- Steve Jordan is running towards the goal now! (in a report on the radio)

2 We use the present continuous to tell people about things that are happening now so that they do or say something in response:

- That big dog is running towards us! Let’s go! I’m listening to the radio. Be quiet! It’s getting late. Shall we go home? That man is looking at you. Do you know him?

A telephone conversation – things that are happening now

Patrick is at home with his son Pete, who is sick. His wife, Simona, is on holiday with their daughters, Ally and Becca. Add the verbs to their phone conversation in the present continuous form. Use short forms if possible.

PATRICK  Everything is fine, thanks. Pete’s sleeping. 1 (sleep) and I ……………………. 1 (sit) in his bedroom. The sun ……………………. 2 (shine) in the garden. What about you? I hope you ……………………. 3 (enjoy) the holiday.

SIMONA  Well, I ……………………. 4 (think) about Pete and you, of course. But we ……………………. 5 (have) fun. Becca ……………………. 6 (swim) in the pool and ……………………. 7 (splash) her new friend, and Ally ……………………. 8 (run) around. She ……………………. 9 (play) football with some Spanish kids.

Two water verbs  
To splash is to make someone wet by making water fall on them.  
To sink is to go below the surface or towards the bottom of water.
B Responses to things that are happening now (1)
Add these verbs in the present continuous to the pictures on the right. Use short forms if possible.

try | sink | splash | stand | shout | walk

0 I'm trying to read my newspaper! Be quiet!
1 You're walking too fast! Please slow down!
2 That boat is sinking! We should help!
3 She's shouting at me! Tell her to stop!
4 That man is shouting at us! What does he want?
5 You're on my foot! Please can you move?

C A television report – things that are happening now
In this news report, add the correct verb form in the present continuous. Use short forms if possible.

‘This is Francesca Martin for ‘Liverpool Newstime’. I'm standing outside the new Ship Museum. I can see a car. Yes, the Queen has landed. Her car has stopped near a group of local people. Now Her Majesty is getting out of her car. Someone has given her some flowers. She is smiling now, and she is talking to a man and woman at the front of the group. The director of the museum, Pandit Desai, is coming to meet her. In a moment, the new Liverpool Ship Museum will be open. And now, back to the studio.’

D Responses to things that are happening now (2)
Jan and Dave are on holiday. Add these sentences to the dialogue:

My husband and I are having a cup of coffee on the deck. I'm taking photos of that yacht. Yes. She's walking towards us now. Dave, I think the owner is looking at you. It's getting late.

JAN Are you taking a photo of me?
DAVE No, I'm taking a photo of that yacht. Can you move to the left, please?
JAN Perhaps you should stop.
DAVE Are you sure?
JAN Put your camera in your bag.
DAVE Oh dear. I don't think she's happy.
OWNER It's a nice yacht, isn't it? Would you like to join us?
JAN That's very kind of you, but we should go back to our hotel.
OWNER Well, come again tomorrow afternoon. We can show you our yacht.
Present continuous
It is not working; we’re not coming

5 Some examples of the present continuous negative:
Look! It isn’t raining any more.
They’re not playing very well at the moment.
He isn’t working on the computer, he’s sleeping.

6 Here is the negative form of the present continuous:

**NEGATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full form</th>
<th>Short form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am not working</td>
<td>I’m not working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are not working</td>
<td>you’re not / aren’t working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/ it is not working</td>
<td>he/she/it’s not/ isn’t working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are not working</td>
<td>we’re not / aren’t working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are not working</td>
<td>you’re not / aren’t working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are not working</td>
<td>they’re not / aren’t working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 We often use these expressions with the present continuous:

**at the moment**  
**these days**  
**this week/month/year**

She isn’t working very hard **at the moment.**  
You’re watching a lot of TV **this week.**

8 We don’t normally use these verbs in the present continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>understand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I don’t like musicals. **(not I’m not liking musicals.)**
| She knows London. **(not She’s knowing London.)** |

→ For on present continuous questions, see p. 20.

Grammar in action

3 We can use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening around now (but perhaps not at the exact moment of speaking). Often we are giving news about friends and family:

**My parents are driving across America at the moment.**
**Marsha is learning German at evening class.**

4 Sometimes we use the present continuous to talk about how life is slowly changing:

**The world is getting warmer.**
**We’re all working longer hours these days.**

E News about friends and family

Dimitri is visiting a museum in London. Put the verbs in the positive or negative form of the present continuous. Use short forms if possible.

DIMITRI Hazell! I don’t believe it! How are you? How nice to see you! Is Joe with you?

Hazel Dimitri! I’m fine, thanks. No, **Joe is working.** (Joe/work) in Paris this month. What about Galina?

DIMITRI She’s fine. (She/not stay) in London with me, because **(her sister/move) house this week, and** (Galina/help) her. Anyway, how is life at the BBC?

Hazel Actually, **(I/not work) in television these days.**

DIMITRI **(You/learn) my language! That’s wonderful. But why?**

Hazel **(I/write) a book about Moscow. Perhaps you can help me!**

DIMITRI Of course. **(We/not live) in Moscow at the moment, but we have many friends there.**

Hazel And what about your children? Are they still enjoying their music?

DIMITRI Yes, but **(they/not play) together these days.** **(Alexander/study) in Germany now, and** (Fedor/teach) the piano at home. Anyway, Hazel, here’s my email address.

Hazel Thanks, Dimitri. We must keep in touch.
F  Life in modern Britain

Finish the -ing forms of the verbs in the first part of this article on modern Britain.

Life is changing in the UK, but is it getting better? For example, we have wonderful computers at work, but we’re working harder. We aren’t enjoying ourselves more. We’re getting up earlier and we’re staying longer at the office. At the supermarket, we’re buying more interesting food. But often, we’re eating it on our own in front of the TV. Of course, we’re living longer. But we aren’t having as many children, so who will look after us when we’re old? Dr Brian Dixon, Professor of Sociology at the University of Yorkshire, has some of the answers. He says ...

G  A phone call to a friend

We use the present continuous for things that are happening right now; and for things that are happening around now. Add the words from the boxes in the present continuous form to this conversation. Use short forms if possible.

eat  eat  look  play  spend  visit  wash  watch

MANDY Sally? It’s Mandy here. What are you doing?
SALLY I’m washing the dishes at the moment. What about you?
MANDY I’m watching TV. My parents are going to Mallorca for the weekend, so I’m going to spend time after the twins. Ben is eating ice cream, and Joe is playing with his trains. What about you? Is Clare in?
SALLY No, she’s visiting Mum and her new husband. It’s just me and Dad.
MANDY Ben! You’re driving too quickly! You’ll be sick. So Sally, how is your dad, anyway?

drive  get  meet  play  not spend  think  work

SALLY Better, thanks. He isn’t spending so much time on his own in his room – he’s meeting people, and he’s playing tennis again.
MANDY Joe! You’re driving that train too fast! Sorry, Sally.
SALLY That’s OK. I’m going to do some homework in a minute.
MANDY You’re very hard at the moment.
SALLY I know. I want to go to university next year. What about you?
MANDY I’m still not sure. I’m thinking about it. Anyway, I’d better go and put the twins to bed. They’re very tired.
SALLY OK. See you tomorrow!

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 122.
**Grammar in action**

1. We normally use the **present simple** for things that are long-term and the **present continuous** for things that are temporary or different from our normal lives.
   
   Look at this information about John:
   - **John lives in London.** (LONG-TERM)
   - **He works for The Times.** (LONG-TERM)
   
   **Every week, he writes about football.** (LONG-TERM)
   - **At the moment, he's writing a book on Great American Golfers,** too. (TEMPORARY)
   - **In fact, he often plays golf with his son, Luke.** (LONG-TERM)
   - **But Luke is skiing in Colorado this week,** (TEMPORARY)
   - **so today John is working at home in his garden instead.** (TEMPORARY)

**A  Long-term and temporary activities (1)**

Luis is describing his business trip to London. Circle the correct options.

My name is Luis. I'm coming\(^1\) from Mexico. I normally work\(^2\) / I'm normally working\(^3\) in Mexico City. But this week I'm visiting\(^4\) / I visit\(^5\) our offices in London. In Mexico City, I live\(^6\) / I'm living\(^7\) with my wife and two children in a large house with a garden. At the moment, though, I stay\(^8\) / I'm staying\(^9\) in a very small apartment in central London. I usually drive\(^10\) / I usually driving\(^11\) to work in Mexico City. But this week, I walk\(^12\) / I'm walking\(^13\) everywhere! It's very good for me. And my English improves\(^14\) / my English is improving\(^15\) - a little!

**B  Long-term and temporary activities (2)**

(i) Three international exchange students are waiting for a college bus at a university in Madrid. Put the verbs in the present simple or continuous. Use short forms if possible.

**XU  Hi! Do you guys speak English? I'm Xu, and I'm from Beijing.**


C Long-term and temporary activities (3)

Gail is talking on the phone to her sister about her son. Add the verbs in brackets in the present simple or continuous. Use short forms if possible.

TINA What's he doing now?
GAIL He's opening (open) the back door and he's walking into the garden.
TINA So what?
GAIL Well, he's wearing (wear) his pyjamas and he's singing (sing) something. And it's midnight.
TINA Oh dear, he's falling (fall) in love again, isn't he?
GAIL I think so. Normally he's coming (come) back from work, and he's having (have) his dinner. Then he's watching (watch) TV, and he's going (go) to bed at 10 p.m.
TINA And now?
GAIL He's not eating (eat) at all. And look, he's dancing (dance)!
Present simple and present continuous
Expressions of time

3 When we use the present simple for regular activities, we often put a frequency adverb (usually, sometimes, never, etc.) before the verb, or we give a time, day or period (at 9.30 in the morning, on Tuesdays, at the weekend, in the summer, etc.) after the verb:

Carla often visits her grandmother.
I eat lots of ice cream in the summer.

And when we use the present continuous for things that are happening around now, we sometimes use expressions like at the moment, these days, this week/month/year:

We’re buying a new house at the moment.
You’re not eating very much these days.

4 We use the present simple (and not normally the present continuous) when we talk about things we like or don’t like, using the verbs like, love, hate, want:

Dave likes jazz. (not Dave is liking jazz.)
I want a cold drink. (not I’m wanting a cold drink.)

and also when we talk about things we know or don’t know, using the verbs know and understand:

Jo knows London. (not Jo’s knowing London.)

With the verb think, we can use the present simple or continuous, but the meaning changes:

I think it’s nice. (= In my opinion, it’s nice.)
I’m thinking about her. (= She’s in my mind/thoughts now.)

Grammar in action

2 We use the present simple to say how often or when we do things in our daily lives. Here we’re talking about our friends’ routines:

Mike sometimes cycles to work.
Heather goes to a French class on Mondays.

We use the present continuous to say how our lives are different from normal:

I’m working in our Paris office at the moment (but I normally work in Manchester).
Stella is walking to work this week (but she normally goes on the bus).

3 We use the present simple to tell friends how we feel about something:

DAVE I love musicals like ‘Phantom of the Opera’.
MEG Do you? I like plays by Shakespeare.
DAVE Really? I don’t understand Shakespeare at all.

D A conversation at a music college

A music student introduces herself to Julie. Put a number where the missing word should be.

DIANA (the = 0) Hello, my name’s Diana. I’m studying here at 0 moment.
JULIE (every = 1) Hi! I’m Julie. I come to these concerts week. What instrument do you play?
DIANA (this = 2) Well, I normally play the violin, but I’m learning to play the trumpet year, too.
JULIE I love violin music. But the trumpet is a difficult instrument, isn’t it?
DIANA (on = 3) Yes! I have a class Tuesdays. It isn’t easy. What about you? Do you play anything?
JULIE (is = 4) Not really. My husband teaching me the piano at the moment. He plays every day.
DIANA It’s not easy to find the time, is it?
JULIE (these = 5) We’re all working very hard days. Too hard. But these concerts after work are great.
DIANA (have = 6) Good. We sometimes concerts at lunchtime, too.
JULIE Lunchtime! What’s that?
DIANA (at = 7) Oh dear! You’re working much too hard the moment!
E  A public notice

Look at this public notice in Watford. Tick (√) the verb forms if they’re correct. If they’re wrong, cross them out and write the correct forms. Use short forms if possible.

We are knowing  **know**  0 that people like  **√**  0 to see beautiful things in their town centres. Some people want  **√**  1 fountains. Other people are liking  **√**  2 statues. But most people love  **√**  3 parks! In Watford, we build  **√**  4 a new park for you this year. We are thinking  **√**  5 you will like it. We understand  **√**  6 that you are wanting  **√**  7 the best, and we work  **√**  8 very hard these days - but the best things take time!

We don’t know  **√**  9 exactly when your new park will be open, but we make  **√**  10 a special park web page at the moment, so go to www.watford.gov.uk/newpark after 5 May for more information!

F  Meeting old and new friends in a restaurant

We use the present simple for long-term things and with verbs such as *like* and *know*, and we use the present continuous for temporary activities. In this conversation, Sam is introducing Michiko to his brother, Chris and Chris’ wife, Rachel, at a local restaurant. Use the correct verb forms. Use short forms if possible.

**SAM**  Chris, Rachel! Hi! Have a seat. This is Michiko.  **She comes**  0 (she/come) from Tokyo.

**RACHEL**  Hi, Michiko! Welcome to Edinburgh, and to Mario’s. I hope  **√**  1 (you/like) Italian food.

**MICHIKO**  2 (I/not know) Italian food well, but  **√**  3 (I/love) pizzas.

**CHRIS**  Good to meet you. Sam says  **√**  4 (you/study) at the university.

**MICHIKO**  That’s right.  **√**  5 (I/learn) about international business systems.

**CHRIS**  6 (The waiter/come) I’ll get some cola, shall I?

**SAM**  7 (Michiko/not like) cola. Can you order some water, too? Anyway, what’s new, Rachel?

**RACHEL**  8 (We/look) for a bigger house, Sam. But they’re very expensive,  **√**  9 (Chris and I/teach) French at a local school, Michiko, so we’re not well-off!

**MICHIKO**  10 (I/not understand). What does ‘well-off’ mean? ‘Rich’. We’re not rich. But we’re OK. What about you, Sam? Anything new?

**SAM**  Nothing, apart from Michiko!  **√**  11 (I/get up),  **√**  12 (I/go) to work,  **√**  13 (I/play) football on Saturdays!

**RACHEL**  14 (The waiter/bring) our drinks. Shall we look at the menu?

**OVER TO YOU**  Now go to page 122.
Present simple and present continuous questions

Do you understand?; When does the library open?

1. Look at these present simple questions:
   Do you want a sandwich?
   Do they remember me?
   Where does he live?

2. To make present simple questions we put do/does before I/you/he/we/they:

   do/does + subject + verb

   You speak English. → Do you speak English?
   He comes from London. → Does he come from London?
   They have an English dictionary. → Do they have an English dictionary?

   We form present simple questions like this:

   **QUESTIONS**
   
   Do I/you
   Does he/she/it
   Do we/you/they

   **Note that the verb after do/does doesn't change:**

   Does he go to the gym?
   (not Does he goes to the gym?)

3. We sometimes put the question words what, when, where, and how much before do/does:

   Where does Michael work?
   What do you want?
   How much does it cost?
   When does the next train leave?

   → For more information on question words and short answers, see p. 48.

**Grammar in action**

1. We use present simple questions to get useful information. At a tourist information office we might ask about travel timetables, ticket prices or opening times:

   Do these buses go to the stadium?
   How much does a ticket cost?
   Does Windsor Castle open on Sundays?

2. We use present simple questions to ask our friends what they want:

   Do you want an ice cream?
   Does Dave want a newspaper?
   What do you want?

---

**A Getting information (1)**

Daniel, from France, is going to spend six months at a college in Madrid. Put the words in brackets in the right order, and write out the questions that he asks his new American flatmate, Greg, on his first day in Madrid.

0. **Do you speak French?** (speak/French/you/do) ~ No, I'm afraid I don't.
1. (the local shops/you/do/like) ~ Yes, the best are on Calle Gracia.
2. (you/do/sports in Madrid/play) ~ Yes, I play tennis.
3. (a map of Madrid/do/have/you) ~ Sure. There's one in the kitchen.
4. (do/a lot of money/metro tickets/cost) ~ No, they're really cheap.
5. (start/does/college/when) ~ On 14 January.

Now, use the words in brackets to form questions.

0. **Do you go to college every day?** (go/to college every day/you) ~ No, I don't go on Fridays.
6. (cook/Spanish food/you) ~ Well, I sometimes make paella.
7. (at the weekend/open/the college library) ~ Yes, I think so.
8 (change/money/the local bank) ~ Yes, it sells euros.
9 (traditional food/cook/the local restaurants) ~ Yes, the food's delicious.
10 (cost/the cinema/how much) ~ It's about six euros for a film.

B Getting information (2)

Faroukh and Aisha are in the Tourist Information Office in Dublin. Use the words in brackets to form questions. Use capital letters where necessary.

ASSISTANT  Hello. Can I help you?
AISHA Yes, please. We're spending the weekend in Dublin.

Do you have a map of the city centre? (of the city centre/have/a map/you)

ASSISTANT  Of course. Here you are. What do you want to see during your visit?
FAROUKH Everything! Dublin Castle, for example.

(how/Dublin Castle/we/find)

ASSISTANT  It's here on Dame Street. A long time ago, there was a small lake in the castle, called the 'Black Pool,' and that's what Dublin means - 'black pool.'
FAROUKH That's interesting. We also want to see Trinity College.

(it/Sundays/on/open)

ASSISTANT  Yes. From 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.
AISHA Thanks. And when open the National Gallery/when)

ASSISTANT  Every day, from 10 a.m. to 7 p.m. It's a great place. Do you have any more questions?
AISHA Yes. One more.

(Dublin Bay/to/the train/go)

ASSISTANT  Sure. I'll give you a timetable.
FAROUKH Thanks.

(the train/much/how/cost)

ASSISTANT  Oh, it's not very expensive. It's £5 for a return ticket.

C Asking friends what they want

Sal, Kit and Kit's baby son, Max, are in a restaurant. Use the words in brackets to form questions with want.

SAL That fish was good. Do you want a dessert? (you/a dessert?) This chocolate fudge cake looks good.

KIT No, I don't. The food was great, but I'm really full.

(you/some more water?)

SAL Yes, please. I'm thirsty today. But what about some apple pie with cream, Kit? That's just fruit, really. Or (you/some cheesecake?)

KIT No, I'm OK, thanks.

SAL What about Max? (he/a banana split?)

KIT No, I don't think so, Sal. He looks tired.

(SAL OK. (we/coffee afterwards?) They say the cappuccino here is very good.

KIT Sure. Are you OK, Max? (you/some more orange juice?)

First match these words with the correct pictures of desserts:
apple pie banana split chocolate fudge cake lemon cheesecake

1 2 3 4
Present simple and present continuous questions

Is it snowing?; What are they doing?

4 Look at these questions:
Are you waiting for me?
Is Mike working upstairs?
What are you doing?

5 To make present continuous questions, we put the form of the verb be before I/you/he/we/they:

- **am/is/are** + subject + -ing form
  
  You are sleeping. → Are you sleeping?  
  It's raining. → Is it raining?

We form present continuous questions like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 We sometimes put the question words what and where before am/is/are:

- **Where are you going? What is she watching?**

→ For more information on question words and short answers, see p. 48.

Grammar in action

3 We use present continuous questions to ask about people's actions at the present moment:

- What are you watching?
- Are you enjoying that pizza?
- What's your mum doing?

4 We use present simple and present continuous questions to ask people about their lives. On your first day at school you might ask a new friend:

- Do you live near here?
- Are you studying French?

D Getting ready to go out in New York

Juan and Cova are staying with friends in New York. Use the words in brackets to form present continuous questions.

DIANE *Are you enjoying that CD, Juan?* (that CD, Juan/you/enjoy)

JUAN Yes, I am. It's a great band. Are they American?

DIANE No, they're Canadian. Is Cova OK? (she/what/do)

JUAN She's resting, Diane. What about Joe? (he/in the kitchen/cook)

DIANE No, he's doing something on the computer upstairs. But it's time to go, Joe!

JOE *(Coming downstairs)* Hi, Juan. Diane. (listen to/you/what)

DIANE It's that 'Paper Dog' CD. (leave now, Joe/we)

JOE Yes, darling. *(rest/upstairs/Cova)*

JUAN Yes, Cova! *(downstairs/come/you)*

E At the opening of an art gallery

(i) Here are eight questions you can ask people you meet. We often use sort of in questions: it means 'type of.' Question 2 is for a visitor or a tourist. Complete the words.

**Basic information:** Do you live near here?  
Are you staying near here?  
Where do you come from?

**Work/study:** Do you work near here?  
What sort of job do you do?  
Are you studying anything?

**Free time:** What sort of things do you do in your free time?  
What sort of food do you like?
A group of people are going to look at some paintings in a new gallery in a small town. Add seven more of these eight questions in the right place.

0. Are you staying near here?
   Yes, we've got a room in a hotel on Oak Street.

1. I play tennis sometimes, but I don't have much free time!

2. I'm a doctor.

3. We really love Indian food. There's a great restaurant near here.

4. I'm from Portugal, actually. What about you?

5. Yes, we've got a flat in the town centre.

6. No, not really. I commute every day to London.

7. Yes, I'm trying to learn Chinese.

F  A conversation at a bus station in New Delhi

We use questions to get information; to ask people what they want; to ask what people are doing at the present moment; and about their lives. Make present simple or continuous questions in this conversation.

ALLY  Excuse me, please. Does this bus stop at Mumbai? (this bus stop/at Mumbai?)

DRIVER Yes it does, Madam. (you/want/a ticket?)

ALLY  I think so. (the bus/leave soon?)

DRIVER No it doesn’t, I'm afraid. But you can wait on these seats.

ALLY  Thank you. (When/it/go?)

DRIVER In an hour.

ALLY  Thank you. (Ally sits down next to a man.) Excuse me.

ROD  Yes, I am.

ALLY  Me too. (you/stay/in New Delhi at the moment?)

ROD  No, I work in Mumbai.

ALLY  Really? (What sort of work/you/do there?)

ROD  I'm a doctor. And you? (you travel/around India?)

ALLY  Yes, it's my first visit. It's very hot, isn't it?

ROD  Of course! We aren't in London, you know! (you/want/a cold drink?)

ALLY  Sure. (Rod stands up) (where/you/go?)

ROD  To a nice hotel near here. We'll have some cold lemonade.

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 122.
Past simple
I played; he made

1 Two examples of the past simple:
I went to London with two friends last summer.
We stayed in a hotel near Hyde Park.

2 To make the positive form of the past simple we add -ed to regular verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

→ For -ed spelling changes (e.g. try/tries), see p. 128.

3 But many common verbs have irregular past simple forms. Look at these examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>irregular past simple forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break/broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come/came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat/ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go/went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave/left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet/met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read/read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send/send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take/took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy/bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch/caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink/drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find/found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget/forgot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have/had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know/knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose/lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make/made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay/paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run/ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see/saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell/sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak/spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend/spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win/won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study/studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write/wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb be has two past forms: was and were.

BE: POSITIVE

Singular  I/he/she/it was  Plural  we/you/they were

Chris and I were in Scotland at the weekend, and it was very cold!

→ For a full list of irregular past participles, see p. 129.

4 We use the past simple for finished past actions:
Liz lived in Madrid for two years. She had a fantastic time there. (Liz doesn’t live in Madrid now.)

When Mike was a child, he spent every summer holiday in Cornwall. (Mike isn’t a child now.)

5 We often use expressions for a finished time with the past simple to talk about when things happened in the past:
I lost my watch last week, but I found it in the bathroom this morning.
Josie phoned about ten minutes ago.

6 We use the past simple to talk about recent actions in finished time periods, to talk about our past, to tell stories and to talk about history.

→ For past simple negatives and questions, see p. 24.

Grammar in action

1 We use the past simple to talk about recent actions in finished time periods – things we did last week, at the weekend, yesterday or this morning:
I went to Brighton last Sunday with Katie. We had a picnic on the beach. It was really nice.

2 We use the past simple to tell people about our lives in the past:
I studied music at college, and we started a band. We played at parties.

We often describe holidays and trips:
My brother travelled by bus from Brazil to Chile when he was a student. He spent a month in Santiago and met a lot of interesting people.

3 We use the past simple to tell true stories (lists of past actions) about ourselves, our families and friends:
I heard a loud noise, so I went downstairs, and I saw a big black dog in the kitchen.

We also tell fictional stories (children’s stories and novels):
A long time ago, an old man lived with his beautiful young daughter in a small house.

A Talking about things we did last week

Tim and Greta meet at the photocopier at work. Make forms of the past simple.

Greta Did you have a good weekend, Tim?

Tim Not bad, thanks. My brother and his wife arrived. (My brother and his wife/arrive) from Scotland on Friday evening, and (they/stay) with us until Sunday lunchtime.

To take it easy means ‘to relax’, e.g. ‘I’m tired. I’m taking it easy today.’
Greta: Really? What did you do?

Tim: Not much. We talked a lot, of course, and we saw a film on Saturday night. Then we ate at that French restaurant, ‘Serge’s’. What about you? Did you have a good weekend?

Greta: Yes, it’s OK, thanks. I went into town on Saturday morning and met Dave, and I went shopping. Then I watched United in the afternoon. (They) lost again, of course. And on Sunday, I took it easy.

Tim: Well, you need a rest now and again.

B Telling people about a holiday

In this email message, choose the right verb, and make forms of the past simple.

Hi Ed,

Thanks for your message. I think you’re working too hard. You need a long holiday. Last year, Barry, the kids and I spent six weeks in Cornwall. It was great! We found a really nice little house near the sea. We went for walks, and we bought food from the local farms. We cooked dinner at home most nights, we read books instead of watching TV, and the kids ran games in the garden. It rained sometimes, of course, but we enjoyed every day. I took a few photos the day before we leave. I’ll send you them, and give you the address of the house!

Best wishes, Stephanie

C Telling true stories about our family

Graham is writing about his Italian grandfather. Add these verbs in the past simple form:

wake stay wear lose tell go marry come
sell spend catch become drink

My grandfather, Alfredo, borrowed £70 and went to Egypt when he was twenty. He wanted to make money. He studied Arabic. He bought Arabic clothes. He spoke to the old men in the markets. He had tea with them. When he was hungry, he fish. Sometimes he washed dishes in restaurants. Then one day an old man him to buy coffee. He travelled about, and bought all the coffee he could find from farmers. He about £50. Then he waited. The following year, 1947, the price of coffee increased by 200%. So he his coffee and made his first profit. After that, he worked hard. He every morning at 6 a.m. He bought things when they were cheap, and he sold them if they expensive! Sometimes he my grandmother, the daughter of an Egyptian farmer. He in Egypt for another 15 years. Then he returned to Italy with my grandmother and a baby son, my father. He built a factory in Naples. But his son, Davide, to England, where I was born.
Past simple
We didn’t go; did they see?

7 Look at this dialogue:

Did you see Stella yesterday? ~ No, she didn’t come to college.

8 We make the negative form of the past simple like this:

subject + did not/didn’t + verb
I didn’t go to the game.

NEGATIVE
I/you he/she/it we/you/they did not/didn’t wait

9 We normally make the question form of the past simple like this:

YES/NO QUESTIONS
Did + subject + verb
Did I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they write to Tim?

QUESTIONS WITH QUESTION WORDS
Question word + did + subject + verb
When did I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they arrive?
When did Shakespeare die? (The answer is 1616.)

10 With be, we don’t use did not/didn’t or Did…?:

BE: NEGATIVE
Singular I/you/he/she/it was not/wasn’t in the garden.
Plural You/we/they were not/weren’t at home.

BE: QUESTIONS
Singular Was I/you/he/she/it late?
Plural Were you/we/they right?

Grammar in action

We use the past simple to talk about national and world history:

Tony Blair was the British Prime Minister from 1997 to 2007. He won three general elections in 1997, 2001 and 2005.

D Sunday evening

Maggie, Dave and Pete are students. Maggie is returning to their flat on Sunday evening. Use the words in brackets to make questions or negative forms.

MAGGIE I’m back! Hi Dave. Did you finish your essay? (you/finish your essay)

DAVE No, I’m tired today. I/not do anything this afternoon.

MAGGIE No. (she/not be at home) But I met Joanna, the new American student, in town.

PETE Oh. (she/be OK)

MAGGIE I think so, but (she/not talk very much).

DAVE (you/invite her to our party) next weekend?

MAGGIE Yes, I’m sure she’ll come. (What/you do all afternoon?) Pete?

PETE (you/make a wonderful dinner) for us?

MAGGIE Well, that’s kind of them. (When/they leave?)

PETE About an hour ago. Do you want a cup of coffee, Maggie?

DAVE Oh. (I/not get any milk this morning.) Pete.

MAGGIE Black coffee is fine. What’s on TV?
E  Going on holiday

John and Liz are driving to the airport for a two-week holiday. Put the words in brackets in the right order to make questions and negative forms of the past simple. Use capital letters to start your answers.

JOHN Did you lock the front door, Liz?
LIZ Yes, definitely. But I didn’t make any sandwiches.

JOHN ............................................................... 0 (lock/you/the front door, Liz/did)?
LIZ ............................................................... 0 (make/l/any sandwiches/didn’t).

JOHN ............................................................... 1 (forget/you/did)?
LIZ ............................................................... 2 (didn’t/I/time/have). We’ll get something at the airport. ............................................................... 3 (your passport/under the bed/was)?
JOHN ............................................................... 4 (you/email Sally/did)?
LIZ ............................................................... 5 (a key/did/you/give her)?

JOHN Of course. But I forgot one thing. ............................................................... 6 (didn’t/the windows upstairs/check/I). Oh dear.
LIZ No, I closed them. (Later) Are you going to work on holiday this time?
JOHN ............................................................... 8 (my laptop/pack/no/didn’t/I).
LIZ Good. We both need a break.

F  An accident in the mountains of Iran

Julie is telling Brad about her trip to Iran with two friends. Add these words to the conversation:

broke stayed walk have carried was were didn’t made arrived what fixed put

BRAD Hi Julie! Did you have a good trip? What’s wrong with your leg?
JULIE I’ll tell you. We stayed in Esfahan by train, but we wanted to spend all our time in the city.
BRAD So did you do?
JULIE We took a taxi one afternoon to the village of Hafeshjan in the Zagros mountains. The local people were very friendly. We found a small hotel, and we stayed the night there.
BRAD And was the hotel comfortable?
JULIE Yes, the hotel wasn’t the problem. Next morning we started our walk in a forest outside the village. We didn’t walk fast, because it was already hot. Soon we saw some rocks and a cave. Then I made a big mistake. I went into the cave. I couldn’t see anything, and I fixed my foot on a wet rock. I fell and broke my leg. Jim and Daniel carried me back to the village. When we got to the hotel, they phoned for a taxi, and they put my leg in the hospital in Esfahan!

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 123.
Past continuous
I was sitting; we weren’t watching; was he eating?

1 Two examples of the past continuous:
I phoned you at nine, but you weren’t there.
~ Oh, I was driving to work.
Did you have a good time in Bristol?
~ Not really. I was cooking meals all weekend.

2 We form the past continuous like this:

**POSITIVE**

I/he/she/it was eating
you/we/they were eating

**NEGATIVE**

I/he/she/it wasn’t eating
you/we/they weren’t eating

**QUESTIONS**

Was I/he/she/it eating?
Were you/we/they eating?

→ For rules on the spelling of -ing forms, see p. 128.

3 We use the past continuous to talk about actions in progress around a particular moment in the past:
I knocked on your door this morning. ~ Oh, I’m sorry.
I didn’t hear you. I was sitting in the garden. (NOT I sat in the garden.)

knocked (exact moment)

9 a.m. — 11 a.m.

was sitting (background action) —

(= I was sitting in the garden before and after you knocked.)

Here is another example:
John was working last night! (= John was working before (and probably after) 12.)

We don’t normally use the past continuous with the verbs like, love, hate, want, know, understand.

Grammar in action

1 We use the past continuous to describe everyday background actions: to tell or ask people what was happening around a particular moment:
What was Paul doing in the library yesterday morning? ~ He was checking his emails.
We were watching TV at about 9 o’clock, and Mike brought us some sandwiches.

A policeman can ask:
What were you doing at 9 o’clock last night?

2 We use the past continuous to describe the background of a story. We can talk about the weather or what people were doing before the story starts:
It was snowing! The boys were happily building a snowman and their mum was looking out of the kitchen window. Then Oliver found some old money...

A Actions around a particular moment in the past (1)

Phil is sending an email from the airport. Add the verbs in the past continuous.

Hi Diana
I’m at the airport. I took a taxi from the flat at midnight. All your old friends were there. When I left, Patti was having (have) a little party in the living room. Lourdes and Tom were dancing (dance). Nick (eat) fish and chips as usual. Patti (not play) the music loud, though, because Giovanni (work) in his room and Jill (sleep). Anyway, they all send their best wishes to you.

See you soon in Berlin!

Phil
B Actions around a particular moment in the past (2)

Boris tells Ron about a visit from an old friend. Look at the phrases in the box. Put the verbs in the past continuous form, and then add the phrases to the conversation.


RON Hello, Boris. How are you? I saw you on Saturday at about 11 o'clock, but I don’t think you saw me.
BORIS Really? Where were you?
RON I was walking past the station. You and Lorna were at the ticket office.
BORIS We weren’t travelling anywhere, actually.
RON Really? Where were you?
BORIS It’s quite funny really. I was making some tea at about 9 o’clock and suddenly the phone rang. It was my Russian friend, Svetlana.
RON Really? She’s a businesswoman, isn’t she? Was she meeting people?
BORIS She was looking for a flat to buy!
RON Wow! She must have lots of money. Did she find anything?
BORIS Yes. She said that she bought the first flat she saw in Kensington, because it was raining and she didn’t have an umbrella.

C Telling a story

Bill and Maria are in Bill’s garden. Use the words in brackets to make past continuous question forms for Maria, and past continuous negative forms for Bill.

BILL I saw a man in the woods last night.
MARIA What were you doing in the woods? (What/you/do/in the woods?)
BILL No, I wasn’t. It was almost midnight. It was raining, and I was looking for Ben, my cat. Then I saw a man.
MARIA Really? (What/he/do?)
BILL No, he wasn’t. (He/not/run.) He was sitting under a tree.
MARIA Really? (He/not/sleep?)
BILL No, he wasn’t. His eyes were open.
MARIA Was he an old man or a young man? (What/he/wear?)
BILL He was young. He was wearing a very big black hat and he was holding Ben!
MARIA No! What did you do?
BILL I ran home and phoned the police. But he wasn’t there when they arrived. And my cat came home about an hour later.
Past continuous
Past simple and past continuous

4 We sometimes use the past continuous and the past simple together in one sentence:
   Barry phoned three times while I was working.

   The past continuous (was working) describes background events, and the past simple (phoned) describes interruptions (complete actions that happened during the background event.)

5 When we use the past continuous and the past simple together like this, we often use while or when:
   While I was living in Spain, I ate at 9 or 10 o'clock in the evening.
   It was snowing when I woke up this morning.

   While and when mean the same, but we don’t use while for very short actions:
   I was walking to work when I saw Roger in his car.

If you’re writing, and you begin a sentence with when or while, put a comma (,) at the end of the first part:
   While you were talking to Max, I got an email from Sue.

Grammar in action

3 We often use the past continuous and the past simple together to describe interruptions at home or at work:
   While I was cleaning the house, Kay and Peter came round for a coffee.
   I was doing my emails when my boss phoned.

4 We also use the past continuous and the past simple together to describe the background and the main actions when we tell our friends about interesting events or news:
   I was driving home when I saw a beautiful rainbow in the sky.
   I met Nicole while I was shopping this morning.

D Interruptions; interesting events and news

Look at these two email messages. When you see a word in brackets at the end of a sentence, put a number where the missing word should be.

Hi Sean,
I hope you’ve had a better day than me! I was training hard when I got up, so I didn’t go jogging (was = 0). Then, I was having breakfast, my boss phoned (while = 1). He wants me to work tomorrow - Sunday! After breakfast I went upstairs to start my essay for college. I was writing the first sentence when Mike on my door, and said he was feeling really ill (knocked = 2). So I downstairs again and phoned for the doctor, and while we were for her, Mum arrived and said, ‘If you’re not doing anything this weekend, you can help me paint the kitchen.’ (went = 3, waiting = 4).
Sharon

Hi Sharon,
Thanks for your message. I’m sorry about your weekend. Things are going better for me. I was buying a new CD in town I saw a really good TV for £150, so I bought it for the flat (was = 5, when = 6). Then I did some shopping and went for a coffee in that new café by the library. While I waiting for my cappuccino, I Julie and she invited me to her party tonight (was = 7, met = 8)! Do you want to come? Charlie will be there. Julie said he had some good news. He was looking for a flat, when his brother got a job in America (was = 9). So now he can live in his brother’s flat - it’s really nice. Anyway, perhaps I’ll see you tonight.
Sean
E  Working with elephants in Africa

We use the past continuous for past activities around a particular moment; and, with the past simple, to describe interruptions or news and interesting events. Lucy is going to Africa for six months. Add these verbs in the past continuous form to the conversation:

do  travel  not enjoy  help  look for  work  get off

ABIGAIL  Jay says you’re going to Africa in September.
LUCY  I know, Abigail. I _______ working very hard last month at the office, as usual, but I ____________ my job.

ABIGAIL  Oh dear. Perhaps you need a change.
LUCY  That’s right. Anyway, last Friday, while I _______ to work on the bus, I saw a poster on the street with some pictures of elephants. People _______ the bus, so I had time to read it.

ABIGAIL  What did it say?
LUCY  Well, they _______ people to work in East Africa for six months.

ABIGAIL  It’s called ‘Elephant Projects’, isn’t it? I _______ a few days ago, and I heard an interview with the director.

LUCY  Really? Yes, you’re right. The director _______ a sick elephant one day, and he had the idea of starting ‘Elephant Projects’. People go to Africa for six months, and they work on small projects.

ABIGAIL  It’s a great idea, Lucy. I’m sure you’ll enjoy it.

F  Breakfast, a hot afternoon and a small accident

Jack, Olivia and Marcia are describing what they did yesterday. In each text, you need to change two verbs from the past simple to the past continuous. Cross out the verbs, and rewrite them at the end.

Jack: morning  I got up at 7 a.m. as usual. The sun _______. My dad was having a shower. I got dressed and went downstairs to have some breakfast. When I ate, the phone rang. It was Benjamin on his mobile. He ran along Green Street. He said, ‘I’ll be at your house in ten minutes’. I normally go to school with Benjamin. While I was waiting for him, my sister came downstairs and put the radio on.

__________ 0  ____________ 1  ____________ 2

Olivia: afternoon  I was working hard all morning, so I went for a walk after lunch. I walked through the park when I met Megan. She sat on the grass. We went to the library together, but it was very busy. Some students were reading, and others were working on the computers. It was very hot, too, so we didn’t stay.

__________ 3  ____________ 4

Marcia: evening  I drove home from work at about 6.30 p.m., when I saw a small accident on the other side of the road. A car stopped quickly and another car hit it. It rained hard at the time. When I got home at about 7 p.m., my husband Oliver was making dinner in the kitchen. I told him about the accident. We had dinner and watched TV until bedtime.

__________ 5  ____________ 6

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 123.
I have finished; they’ve left

1 Two examples of the present perfect:
   *Felicity has worked here for ten years.*
   *I'm sorry. I've broken this cup. ~ Don't worry.*

2 We make the present perfect positive like this:
   **subject + have/has + past participle**
   *Sheila has paid the bill.*

3 Regular past participles end in -ed:
   - walk → walked
   - finish → finished

   ⇒ For -ed spelling changes (e.g. try/tried), see p. 128.

   But many common verbs have irregular past participles. Look at these examples:
   - do → done
   - eat → eaten
   - read → read
   - make → made
   - find → found
   - speak → spoken

   ⇒ For a full list of irregular past participles, see p. 129.

4 We normally use the present perfect when we think about the past and present together. We use it for past actions that are linked to the present (the result is important now). Look at these examples:
   *I've lived in this house for 20 years.*
   This means 'I started to live in this house 20 years ago (past action), and I'm still here now.' (present moment)

5 We use the present perfect to describe recent past actions that are linked to the present moment, to describe our lives up to now, to talk about personal news and about local, national, or international news.

   ⇒ For present perfect negatives and questions, see p. 32.

### Grammar in action

1 We use the present perfect to describe our lives from any time in the past up to now. Here two people are talking about past holidays:
   *I've been to Portugal and Spain. ~ Greg's visited Seville twice and he says it's wonderful.*

2 We use the present perfect when we tell someone about recent past actions that are linked to the present moment. A student can talk about his progress in class:
   *I've finished this exercise, and Jack and I have just discussed our answers.*

3 We use the present perfect to talk about personal news. Here, we're telling a friend about our family:
   *Serena's bought a holiday flat in Spain, Mike's moved to Scotland and I've got a new job in London!*

### Describing our lives

This is Lewis' first day at work for a small charity in South Africa. Lisa, his boss, is introducing Lewis to his new colleagues. Choose the right verb, and make short forms of the present perfect.

**LISA** Good morning, everyone! This is Lewis, our new worker. Lewis, this is our small but fantastic team! First, here's Kate. She 5 worked 9 (spend/work) here for two years. She 1 (send/have) thousands of emails for us, and she speaks French, Spanish and Dutch. Very useful.

**KATE** Hi, Lewis. I'm sure you'll enjoy it here. I 2 (live/know) all over the world, but South Africa is the best!
LISA And this is Tony. He ☐️ (visit/spend) a lot of time in Zimbabwe and Kenya. He ☐️ (travel/see) in Liberia and Sierra Leone, too. If you have any questions about Africa, ask Tony. And Kate and Tony ☐️ (talk/meet) Nelson Mandela!

TONY He's a great guy, Lewis. He ☐️ (go/do) so many amazing things.

LISA And the final member of the team is Anya. She ☐️ (be/come) to New York and London several times to talk to other charities. And she ☐️ (make/speak) at least a million telephone calls for us in the last three years!

ANYA And I've just made some coffee, too. Would you like some, Lewis?

B Things that have happened today

Vincent and Brian are at the zoo with Vincent's son Sam, and Brian's daughters, Josie and Stella. Sophie, Brian's wife, rings from home. Make short forms of the present perfect from the words in the brackets.

BRIAN Hi, Sophie. We're at the zoo now. We've just had ☐️ (We/just/have) coffee and cakes. ☐️ (The kids/see) the giraffes, the crocodiles and the elephants.

SOPHIE Are they enjoying themselves?

BRIAN Oh yes. Stella's using her new camera. ☐️ (She/take) lots of photos. Josie is OK, but ☐️ (she/lose) her blue teddy bear. We may find it later. Oh, and Sam ate too much cake.

SOPHIE Me? I'm all right. ☐️ (I/do) quite a lot of work. ☐️ (I/write) six or seven pages of my report, and ☐️ (I/speak) to Phil at the office. Things are going OK.

BRIAN Good. Well, ☐️ (Vincent/just/pay) the bill, and ☐️ (Josie and Stella/run) out of the café, so I think it's time to see the monkeys. Bye!

C Personal news

Baz is spending a month in Thailand, and Bart is emailing him news about their flatmates. Add the following verbs in the present perfect form:

- buy
- write
- have
- win
- go
- start
- break
- leave

How are you? I hope things are going well in Bangkok. I've got some bad news, I'm afraid. Christine ☐️ (have) an accident on her bike. She ☐️ (break) her leg. Scott ☐️ (pay) the flat and he ☐️ (go/leave) to New Zealand. So we need a new flatmate. But Susie is fine. She's doing well at work, and she ☐️ (buy) a new car — a red sports car, this time. Omar ☐️ (spend) £1000 for a photo of his sister's baby! Finally, I ☐️ (write) my new evening course at college, and I ☐️ (start) my first essay. Studying after work is not very nice!

All the best, Bart
6 Look at these examples:

I haven't done any work today.
Have you seen Clare this morning?

7 We make the present perfect negative like this:

NEGATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full form</th>
<th>Short form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I have not seen                 | I haven't |)
| he/she/it has not seen          | he hasn't |
| we/you/they have not seen        | we haven't |

8 We make present perfect questions like this:

QUESTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have</th>
<th>I/you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Has</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>we/you/they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| eaten? |

9 Ever and never

We often use ever when we're asking questions about people's lives:

Have you ever been to Australia?

We sometimes use never instead of the negative form to make the meaning stronger:

I've never played golf in my life.

We put ever and never before the past participle.

10 Gone and been

When we say 'Joanna's been to London,' we mean 'she was in London, but now she is back at home.'

When we say 'Joanna's gone to London,' we mean 'she is in London now.'

Grammar in action

4 We use the present perfect to talk about local, national and international news:

Catherine Ndereba has won the gold medal for Kenya for the third time and has run 1500m in a new world-record time!

5 We can use the present perfect when we tell someone what we haven't done or what hasn't happened in the time up to now.

The rain hasn't stopped today, so I haven't been to the shops and Dad hasn't done the gardening.

We can also ask questions about events in the time up to now. Here, we're asking a friend about their week:

Have you been to the gym this week? Has Steve phoned? Have your parents emailed you?

D A holiday in Greece

We use the present perfect to talk and ask about things in the time up to now. Make questions and negative forms in this telephone conversation.

MINA Hi Gill. Has Anne phoned you? (Anne(phone/you))

GILL No. I'm bored, actually. Anne hasn't phoned me. (Anne/not phone/me), and (Steve/not email/his new photos) and, of course, (I/not do/my homework.)

MINA Oh dear. (you/eat?)

GILL Yes. I had a horrible sandwich. What about you? (you/talk/to Luke?)

MINA No. (He/not/finish work.) And there's nothing on TV except a film called Cold Days In Stockholm. (you/ever/see/it?)

GILL No, but there is some good news, actually. (Steve/speak/to you about a holiday in Greece?) His parents have bought a house there.

MINA Wow! (I/never/be/to Greece.) I'm sure it's lovely. (you/see/any photos of the house?)

GILL No. His parents bought it six months ago, and

MINA Well, a holiday in Greece is a great idea. Talk to you tomorrow, Gill.

32 | Past and perfect tenses
E The news from East Cumbria

Look at the website for East Cumbria Radio News. Match the beginnings and endings of local news stories.

East Cumbria Radio News

Today's news...
The old library at Lofton... e 0 a ...have escaped from Hill Farm. (CLICK FOR MORE)
Milford United have... 1 b ...a five-metre pizza for charity. (CLICK FOR MORE)
A local woman has found... 2 c ...has sold a bottle of wine for £10,000. (CLICK FOR MORE)
Two large pigs called Rosie and Millie... 3 d ...won their first match of this season. (CLICK FOR MORE)
A local restaurant has made... 4 e ...has closed after seventy five years. (CLICK FOR MORE)
Lord Milchett's son... 5 f ...six gold coins on the beach. (CLICK FOR MORE)

F Returning from a business trip

We use the present perfect to talk about recent actions, our lives and news linked to the present. Toby has just come back from Thailand, and is making phone calls to a restaurant and to his wife's sister.

(i) Add the following words to his telephone messages. Note that there is one extra word:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>returned</th>
<th>have gone</th>
<th>been</th>
<th>just</th>
<th>made</th>
<th>ever</th>
<th>never</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(1) Hello. It's Toby Daw here. I've just 6 seen the name of your restaurant on my bank statement, but I've 1 eaten at the Country Kitchen. I've 2 to my bank this morning. They told me to phone you. Have you 3 a mistake? The date of the meal was 17 December and the price was £64. Please ring me back on 960123.

(2) Hi Karen. It's Toby here. I've just 4 from Thailand. Have you 5 been to Bangkok? It's a really interesting city. Anyway, 6 you seen Diana? She isn't work or at home. Bye for now!

While Toby is out, the restaurant and Karen both phone back.

(ii) Find four more mistakes in their messages, and rewrite them correctly at the end.

(3) Hi Toby, Karen here. I've just listened to your message. Diana isn't at home because she's been to London. Mum is ill, I'm afraid. We tried to phone you lots of times. Has you lost your mobile again? Ring me back.

(4) Good afternoon, Mr Daw. This is Brian Hart from the Country Kitchen. We haven't make a mistake, I'm afraid. Someone used your card and your name on 17 December. I am just spoken to our manager, Greg Turner. He says you must contact your bank again.

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 123.
Past simple and present perfect
I lived or I have lived

We use the past simple:
1. for recent actions in finished time periods: Susie phoned for a taxi and left the party at 10 p.m. yesterday.
2. to tell people about our lives in the past: I went to Florida in 2007. The sun shone all the time.
3. to tell stories about the past: Sal met Joe at college, but then she moved to China, and Joe didn’t hear from her again until 2006.
4. to talk about history: The Queen’s father, George VI, died in 1952.

Use with: yesterday, two years ago, in 1976, at school

We use the present perfect:
1. for recent actions with a present focus: Paul hasn’t phoned, and Susie has just left.
2. to describe our lives up to now: Have you ever been to America?
3. to talk about recent personal news: Have you heard about Sal? She’s moved house and she’s had a baby.
4. to report local, national and international news: The actor Michael Stig has died.

Use with: just, ever, never

Grammar in action

1. We use the **past simple** to talk about the things we did recently in **finished time periods** – last week, at the weekend, or yesterday:
   - Steve went shopping yesterday. He bought ten new CDs and two pairs of trainers! (we’re giving information about a past event.)

   We can use the **present perfect** to tell people about things we’ve done recently too, but all these things have a **present focus**: we’re thinking about the past and the present together.
   - The Queen has gone to Canada. (= the Queen is in Canada now.)
   - I’ve just finished my college project.
   - I’ve bought a DVD to celebrate!

2. We use the **past simple** to talk about things we did in the past. This might be when we were young, or at work, or on holiday:
   - My parents lived in Australia for ten years.
   - I didn’t see Joshua at the office. Did you play football at school?

   We use the **present perfect** to describe and ask about our lives up to now. We can talk about the places we’ve visited, our jobs, and free time activities:
   - Henry has lived here since May.
   - Have you ever seen a tiger? I’ve played tennis all my life. I love it!

3. We often use the **present perfect** and then the **past simple**. We use the **past simple** when we give more details or information:
   - Have you ever been to India? – Yes, I have. I visited Goa last November.
   - I’ve lost my glasses. I put them on the table ten minutes ago.
   - James has passed his exam. He got 80%.

A Actions in finished periods, and actions with a present focus

Sara and Aisha, on a business trip, are meeting for breakfast in their hotel. Circle the correct verb phrases.

SARA  Hi Aisha. How are you? I’ve started breakfast. I started breakfast. I hope that’s OK.
I’ve phoned Clare / I phoned Clare five minutes ago, but she’s still in her bedroom.
She’s lost / She lost her new watch.

AISHA Oh no. I hope she finds it. Her husband has given / Her husband gave it to her for her birthday last month, didn’t he?

SARA  That’s right. Anyway, what have you done / what did you do yesterday evening?

AISHA  I have met / I met Karl and Franco, and we had a pizza together. What about you?

SARA  I have gone / I went to bed early. I was a bit tired. Are you hungry?
I’ve just asked / I just asked the waiter for some eggs. What about you?
AISHA No, thanks. I’ll just have coffee and toast. Have you spoken / Did you speak \(^8\) to Joe today?
SARA Yes, I have seen / I saw \(^9\) him on the stairs half an hour ago. Why?
AISHA He’s bought / He bought \(^{10}\) another phone, and I don’t have his new number.
SARA We’ll see him later. Here are my eggs, anyway, and there’s Clare, by the door.

B Talking about the past, and describing our lives (1)

Read Keiko’s letter, and put the verbs in the past simple or present perfect form. Use short forms if possible.

Dear Sir/Madam,

I’ve seen \((\text{see})\) your advertisement in ‘Metro’. Please would you send me an application form for the Saturday job in the Oxfam shop on Parsons Lane?

I worked \((\text{work})\) in shops before. Last year, for example, I spent \((\text{spend})\) two months in my uncle’s shoe shop in Kyoto, and when I was \((\text{be})\) at school, I sold \((\text{sell})\) fruit and vegetables on a Saturday market. I live \((\text{live})\) in London for six months now.

I started \((\text{start})\) a short course in Business at a local college, and I’ll be in UK until September.

I passed \((\text{pass})\) all my English exams at university last year in Japan, and I use \((\text{use})\) PCs all my life. I also like talking to people and helping them. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Keiko Tachibana

C Talking about the past, and describing our lives (2)

David works for an international bank in London. He’s meeting his boss. Put the verb phrases in the past simple or present perfect forms. Use short forms if possible. Make questions when you see a question mark (?)

ALISON Hello, David. Have a seat. You’ve worked \((\text{you/work})\) for us for three years now, and you’re doing a good job, but my secretary says you want to go to the Boston office. \((\text{you/spend})\) much time abroad, David?

DAVID I lived \((\text{live})\) in Australia for a few years when I was a child. My parents returned \((\text{My parents/return})\) to England in 1990. But I wasn’t \((\text{l/not/work})\) abroad. I’d really like to.

ALISON And you visit \((\text{you/visit})\) America on holiday?

DAVID Oh yes, I was there twice. I went to Florida on a school trip in 1995, and I travelled \((\text{l/travel})\) in New England in 2000 when I was at college. I loved it.

ALISON You go to Boston on that New England trip, David?

DAVID Yes, we stayed \((\text{we/stay})\) there for a couple of days. It’s a great city.

ALISON And you talk \((\text{you/talk})\) to your wife about going to Boston?

DAVID Yes, Fay is a writer, so she can do her work anywhere. She’d like to spend some time in Boston.

ALISON OK, David. I’ll talk to the Boston manager tomorrow morning.
Past simple and present perfect
Finished time or just, ever, and never

1 We often use expressions for a finished time with the past simple:

last month last year last Thursday etc.
ten minutes ago a few days ago a year ago etc.
in October in the summer in 2002 etc.
at the weekend at Christmas at Easter etc.

or place expressions:
on the street in town in Manchester in a café at college at the station at Greg’s house etc.

I had a meal with my uncle a month ago.
Francesca met me at the station.

With this morning, today, this month, etc., we normally use the present perfect if the period is not finished. At 11 a.m., for example, we say, ‘Have you worked hard this morning?’ but at 3 p.m., we say ‘Did you work hard this morning?’

2 Just, ever and never

When we use the present perfect for recent activities, we often use just (= a moment ago):
I’m sorry, Henry’s just left. Can I help you?

When we’re talking about our lives, we sometimes use ever (= at any time) or never (= not at any time):
Have you ever worked in America?
I’ve never eaten rabbit or snake.

We put just, ever and never between have/has and the past participle.

Grammar in action

4 We use the past simple to talk about lists of past events:
Martin left his job, sold his house and travelled across India for six months!

We use the present perfect to talk about recent personal news:
Chris has left her job at the bank. She wants to do something different.

5 We use the past simple to talk about national and world history:
Explorers found the Titanic in 1985.
The Beatles sang their first songs at the Cavern Club in Liverpool.

We use the present perfect to talk about local, national and international news:
A woman from Liverpool has found £100,000 in her garden!
U2 have played at Wembley.

D A village website

We use the past simple for stories and history, and we use the present perfect for personal, local and national news. Cross out six wrong verb forms in this village website and rewrite them.

Poire Village Website

• Exactly a hundred years ago, Jean Marais has travelled from Poire to Paris, and, a year later, he opened his first cigar shop. Between 1910 and 1940, he has sold a million cigars to Parisians!

• 90 year-old Colette Duboeuf bought a car, and she has just had her first lesson!

• The French President sang a song with local schoolchildren when he has visited Poire in 1962.

• Mme Chamot’s son returned from Africa, and he has brought his new wife, Adela. Her son, Christophe, left the village two years ago, and has gone to Kenya.

• In 1975, the American actor Hal Brown has bought a house in Poire. He lived here for ten years.
E  A holiday friend

Michael is emailing Holly about his holiday in France. Fill the spaces with these words:

agon ever in in just last last never

Hi Holly,

I saw this great film __last__ week about Peru. Have you __1__ been to South America? I'd love to go there. We've __2__ been to France again, but I really want to travel to Asia or Africa or Brazil. I've __3__ been outside Europe! We met a guy (Abdou) from Senegal on the campsite __4__ France. He left his country two years __5__ to find work. His father became sick __6__ 2005, so now Abdou sends money home. He found work __7__ month in the campsite restaurant. I've got his email address, so we'll keep in touch. Hope you're well, Holly.

Regards,

Michael

F  Lunch in a Yorkshire garden

Ai-Li, from China, is staying with an English family (Susi and Chris, and their daughter, Keira). It's Sunday, and they're finishing lunch in the garden. Put the verbs in the past simple or the present perfect. Use short forms if possible.

CHRIS  I've __just made__ (just/make) some tea, Ai-Li. Would you like a cup?

AI-LI  No, thanks. I __1__ (have) four cups today. Can I have some water, please?

SUSI  Of course you can. We drink too much tea in this house, Ai-Li. __2__ (you/have) a good day yesterday? I'm sorry I __3__ (not/be) here. I'm so busy at work at the moment.

AI-LI  Great, thanks. Keira __4__ (show) me the shops in Harrogate in the morning.

KEIRA  And in the afternoon, Dad __5__ (drive) us to the Scarecrow Festival in Kettlewell.

AI-LI  It was amazing! I __6__ (never/see) so many scarecrows.

SUSI  My father lived in Kettlewell, Ai-Li. He __7__ (work) on a farm there when he was a young man.

KEIRA  We __8__ (not/see) him for a long time, Mum. Is he OK?

SUSI  Yes, he's fine. He __9__ (just/buy) a new car, so I'm sure he'll visit us more often now. Do you see your grandparents sometimes, Ai-Li?

AI-LI  Every week. They live close by. __10__ (you/ever/be) to China, Mrs Bell?

SUSI  Call me Susi, Ai-Li. Yes, I __11__ (go) to Hong Kong on business in 2002. But I __12__ (not/be) to Beijing or Shanghai or the rest of China.

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 123.
1 Some examples of the future with *going to* (be going to + verb):

*I'm going to buy a new TV.*
*Look out! You're going to burn that toast!* 
*Where are we going to meet tonight?* 
*She isn't going to win this time.*

2 To form the future with *going to* we use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I am/’m going</strong></td>
<td><strong>I am not/’m not going</strong></td>
<td><strong>am I going</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it is/’s going</strong></td>
<td><strong>he/she/it is not/’s not/isn’t going</strong></td>
<td><strong>is she/he/it going</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you/we/they are/’re going</strong></td>
<td><strong>you/we/they are not/’re not/ aren’t going</strong></td>
<td><strong>are you/we/they going</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 We normally use the short forms of *be*:

*I'm going to phone Penny.*
*They're going to win.*

4 We use the future with *going to* to talk about our plans or intentions. If, for example, a friend says *I'm going to find a new job,* then she's decided that she wants a new job, but she probably hasn't started looking yet.

We sometimes use *going to* with the verb *go*:

*I'm going to go home soon and then I'm going to go to the cinema this evening.*

### Grammar in action

1 We can use the future with *going to* to talk about things we’ve decided to do in our free time:

*We're going to have a picnic in the park this afternoon. Would you like to come?*

2 We can use the future with *going to* to talk about things we’ve decided to do around the house:

*I’m going to paint my bedroom this weekend.*

*What are you going to cook tonight?*

3 We can use the future with *going to* to talk about our plans at college or at work:

*I’m going to do a project on whales.*

*We’re going to open a new shop in Leeds.*

---

### A Talking about things we’ve decided to do in our free time

Lily and Ethan are on holiday with their friends, Jamie and Ella. Put the words in the right order to form the future with *going to*. Use capital letters where necessary.

**LILY** ___________________________ 6 (you/to/are/what/goin/going/do) today, guys? **JAMIE** ___________________________ 1 (to/a swim/going/have/I’m) before breakfast. What about you, Ethan?

**ETHAN** ___________________________ 2 (get/I’m/to/going) an English newspaper.

**LILY** ___________________________ 3 (an English paper/to/going/buy/aren’t/you) every day, are you Ethan? We're in Italy now!

**ELLA** ___________________________ 4 (are/spend/Jamie and I/the morning/to/going) on the beach, Lily. We need a rest.

**LILY** ___________________________ 5 (some shopping/do/to/Lily and I/going/are) before lunch. We want to get some presents for our families.

**JAMIE** ___________________________ 6 (cycling/go/going/I’m/go/to) in the afternoon, Ethan. There's a little fishing village about twenty kilometres away. Do you want to come?
B  Talking about the things we've decided to do around the house

Ryan is emailing Daisy. Look at the picture on the right, and then add these phrases to his message, using short forms of the future with going to:

l/vacuum the carpet  l/clean the windows  l/cut the grass  l/do some work around the house  l/wash the bath  l/put some old suitcases  l/tidy my clothes

Thanks for your message. Yes, I can come to dinner on Sunday evening. I'm looking forward to it, because I'm going to do some work around the house today and tomorrow. First ....................................................... 1 in the attic. Then ....................................................... 2 in the bedroom. Next ....................................................... 3 in the bathroom. Then ....................................................... 4 outside. After lunch, ....................................................... 5 in the living room. Finally, on Sunday morning, ....................................................... 6 in the garden. So I'll be ready to relax on Sunday evening!

Love, Ryan

C  Talking about our plans after leaving college

Harry and Jessica are having a coffee at college. They're taking their final exams this month. Use positive, negative and question forms of the future with going to to complete their conversation. Use short forms if possible.

JESSICA Are you going to study 9 (you/study) all weekend, Harry?
HARRY No, ....................................................... 1 (I/not work) on Sunday. I need some fresh air.
JESSICA I can't. I've got an exam on Monday morning. But ....................................................... 3 (I/spend) two or three weeks in Spain in the summer. What about you?
HARRY No, I haven't got any money. ....................................................... 5 (Abigail and I/find) summer jobs.
JESSICA And ....................................................... 6 (what/you/do) after that?
HARRY Well, I've got a job in London, but ....................................................... 7 (Abigail/stay) in America with her mother's family for six months. What about you?
JESSICA ....................................................... 8 (I/not look) for work in the UK immediately. Amy and I want to go abroad: ....................................................... 9 (We/teach) English in Shanghai for a year.
HARRY That's a good idea. I'm sure it's a really interesting place to see.
The future with *going to*

**Predictions**

5  We use *going to* when something that we can see now makes us think that an event is sure to happen:

*Look at the time! You're going to miss your train.*

(When we look at the clock, the time helps us to predict that we're going to be too late for the train.)

If the car park near town is almost full, we can say:

*It's going to be busy in town today.*

Or, if our team is playing badly, we can say:

*We're going to lose the match.*

6  We use the negative form to talk about things which probably aren't going to happen:

*It's 8 o'clock. We aren't going to find a present for her now.*

7  And we can ask questions about the future:

*Is it going to be windy today?*

---

**Grammar in action**

4  We use *going to* to predict the future using information that we can see around us now. We can make predictions about the weather or the actions of other people:

*Look at the clouds! It's going to rain.*

*She's going to sleep well tonight!*

*That dog looks really angry. It's going to attack her!*

---

**D What's going to happen?**

This is a street in Bristol. Make sentences using forms of *going to*.

- She/break/her leg!
- Careful! The traffic lights/change.
- The old man/win/again.
- It/be/a hot afternoon.
- They/make/a mess.
- You/have/an ice cream?

- They’re going to make a mess.
- موعد مايكل
- موعد مايكل
- موعد مايكل
- موعد مايكل
- موعد مايكل

---

40 | Talking about the future
E Talking to a friend in the park

We use going to to talk about our plans, and to predict the future. Ruby and Emma are sitting on a park bench. Add the words in brackets and the going to form of one of these verbs:

**say** **do** **do** **spend** **go** **work** **cook** **meet** **get up**

RUBY  What **are you going to do** 6 (you) at the weekend?
EMMA  I'm quite busy, really. 1 (I) on the computer on Saturday morning. Then on Saturday evening 2 (I) Daniel's sister for the first time. Normally she lives in New Zealand, but she's staying in England for a couple of weeks. What about you, Ruby?
RUBY  I'm a bit tired, so 3 (I, not) anything on Saturday. But on Sunday morning, 4 (I) early, if I can. I want to go to the market.
EMMA  5 (you) with Grace and Lucy?
RUBY  No, only Grace. 6 (We) dinner on Sunday evening for Grace's mum, so we'll try to get something good to eat at the market.
EMMA  7 (Lucy) the weekend with one of her friends in Brighton or Cambridge.
EMMA  That's nice. Ruby, do you see that man? What's he doing?
RUBY  He's coming towards us. I think 8 (he) something.
MAN  Excuse me, I've lost my dog. She's small and black. Have you seen her anywhere?

F New Year blog

Nathan writes a blog every week about his family and friends. This is the beginning of his first blog in January. To make the text correct, add the following words:

**are** **be** **you** **going** **not** **to do** **is**

My brother Luke and I have got plans, of course, for the New Year. First, we're both to learn Chinese, because China is now the most important country in the world. In fact, I'm going to fly to Beijing, if I can find the money. Luke is going visit Mr Xu at our local Chinese restaurant, Hot Wok, to get some information about China. Next, we're going to paint our bedroom. The walls going to be green and red, and the ceiling is going to dark blue with stars, like the sky at night. Luke going to talk to Dad about this. Finally, I'm going to better at school. I'm going to work harder, because I work hard enough already - I'm going to use a new system, called the 'System of Seven': I'm going to learn seven new things every day, and write them down in a special book. Are going to do anything interesting this year? Send me an email.

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 123.
The future with will and shall
Will: predictions, decisions, and offers

1 Some examples of the future with will and shall:
   Where’s Jo? ~ I don’t know. I’ll give her a ring.
   Do you think it will rain this evening?
   Shall we wait for them, or shall we go in?

2 To form the future with will we use:
   will/’ll + verb
   We will help them.

   POSITIVE
   I/he/she/it/we/you/they   will/’ll talk to Sam.

   NEGATIVE
   I/he/she/it etc.   will not/won’t talk to Sam.

   QUESTIONS
   Will I/he/she/it etc. talk to Sam.

We can put a question word before will:
   When will you talk to Sam?

3 We use will to talk about the future in general.
   Normally we say what we think will happen:
   She’ll do very well in her exam tomorrow.
   That’s a very big pizza. You won’t finish it!
   Will they stay in London all week?

   Sometimes we say what we know will happen:
   Ben will be eighteen next month.

4 We use will to make quick decisions and offers:
   What would you like? ~ I’ll have a tea, please.
   I’m just going to the shops. ~ OK, Tom will drive you.

5 We sometimes use I think/don’t think with will:
   I think she’ll ring tonight.
   I don’t think they’ll win today.

   And when we want someone’s opinion, the question form with you is very common:
   Do you think it will rain?
   Do you think Adam will come with us?

   We also use I’m sure with will or won’t:
   I’m sure they won’t stay long.

   Another way of saying ‘goodbye’ informally is I’ll see you later or See you later.

Grammar in action

1 We use will to say what we think or know about future events in our personal and work lives:
   I’ll be busy at work this week.
   The tickets won’t arrive today.
   Will Molly take a taxi to the station?

2 We use will to make quick decisions and offers in social situations:
   You look tired. I’ll make you a cup of coffee.
   Is that the phone? ~ I’ll answer it.
   We’ll help you with the washing-up.

A Saying what we think or know about the future

Lauren has a job interview later this morning. Her friend James phones her. Add short forms of will to make positive and negative sentences and questions.

JAMES When will the interview finish? 0 (When/finish?)
   Perhaps I can meet you for lunch.

LAUREN I don’t know. 1 (think/last/about an hour.)

JAMES Good. 2 (You/finish/at twelve.)
   We could meet at ‘Alonso’s.’ (It/not/be/busy/at that time, Lauren.) Their fish is really fresh.

LAUREN That’s fine.

JAMES Are you feeling OK about the interview?

LAUREN I’m not sure. 3 (Do you think/they/ask me/about my year in Africa?)

JAMES Yes, I think so. Don’t worry. 4 (I’m sure/you/do/well.)
LAUREN I hope so.
JAMES ........................................... 6 (When/you/get the result?)
LAUREN .......................................... 7 (They/tell/me/at the end of
the interview.)
JAMES OK. Good luck, then, Lauren. I’ll see you later.

B Quick decisions and offers in social situations

Adam and Emily are meeting Carmen, a Spanish friend, at a restaurant. Add these phrases to their conversation:

Adam will fix it  I’ll open  I’ll have a glass  we’ll have a bottle
I’ll take  we’ll drive  I’ll order  I’ll bring

ADAM Here we are. .................. I’ll take 6 your jacket, Emily. Can you see Carmen?
EMILY Yes. She’s here by the window. Hi, Carmen! How are you?
CARMEN Fine thanks, Emily, though it’s a bit hot in here.
EMILY ......................................... 1 this window. Is that better?
ADAM Did you find the restaurant easily?
CARMEN Actually, I got lost, Adam. It’s a long way by bus.
EMILY Don’t worry, ................................... 2 you home afterwards.
WAITER Good evening. Welcome to ‘Mildred’s’. Would you like some drinks?
CARMEN .................................. 3 of still water, please.
EMILY And ......................... 4 of white wine.
WAITER Of course. .................................. 5 the wine list.
ADAM So, Carmen, how’s life?
CARMEN Not bad, thanks. My flat is OK, but my car won’t start. That’s why I came by bus.
EMILY Don’t worry, ................................... 6 for you. You love fixing cars, don’t you, darling?
ADAM ......................................... 7 some starters. What would you both like?

C Future events, and making offers

Read this email from Veronica to her friend Mary. Put ‘/’ in the seven places where the word will is missing.

Hi Mary
I’m so sorry to hear about the flood in Gloucester, and to see the photo of your house. They say the weather will get better on Thursday and Friday. I hope so, but life will be difficult for you in the next few days. I saw the Prime Minister on TV in Gloucester yesterday, but you get any help from the government? They need to spend more money. I’m sure we will see more floods in the UK in the future. Anyway, I listened to the news this morning. The roads near you will be OK at the weekend, so Tom and I come over on Saturday morning. We will help you to clean your floors, and Tom will buy us all some fish and chips on Saturday night!
Love and best wishes,
Veronica
Future with will and shall

6 We normally use shall in questions:

*Shall we take a taxi?*

Where shall I put my coat?

Shall I get you a glass of water?

7 We form questions with shall like this:

**(question word) + shall + I/we + verb**

Shall we see a film?
When shall I meet you?

8 We use shall I/shall we to make suggestions, and to find out what people think about them:

Shall we have a cup of coffee? ~ That's a good idea.
You look tired. Shall I drive?

9 We use Shall I to make polite offers:

Shall I take your bag?
It's quite cold outside today. Shall I get you a jumper?

---

D Suggestions in town; polite offers at home

Hannah and Anton are meeting Colette and Vincent at the station. Use shall and these words to complete the conversation:

**I/drive we/have I/put**

ANTON Colette, Vincent! Good to see you! Shall I put your suitcases in the car?

COLETTE Thanks very much. How are you both? We haven't seen you for such a long time!

HANNAH We're fine, thanks. Are you hungry? a meal in town?

VINCENT That would be great. We didn't have any lunch.

ANTON Excellent! us to that restaurant by the river, Hannah?

HANNAH The Italian place? Why not? It's very friendly there.

(Later, in the car.)

**we/get we/park**

VINCENT This is a new car, Anton. It's very nice.

ANTON Thanks, Vincent. I bought it last month.

HANNAH here, darling? We can walk along the river.

ANTON I know it's cold, but some fresh air for ten minutes?

COLETTE That's a good idea.

(Later, at Hannah and Anton's house, after the restaurant.)

**I/take I/make**

HANNAH Come in and have a seat. your coats?

COLETTE Thanks. It's nice and warm in here.

ANTON you both some coffee?

VINCENT Tea for me, please. I never sleep after coffee.

COLETTE Coffee is fine for me, Vincent. I'm sure I'll sleep tonight. We've had a long day.
E Returning from South Africa

We use will to say what we think or know about the future, and to make quick decisions and offers. We use shall for suggestions and polite offers. David and Linda's daughter, Beth, is coming home to Scotland after eighteen months in South Africa. Add 'll, will or shall to the conversation.

LINDA: Do you think Beth will look for a job in Scotland?
DAVID: I don't know. She didn't say very much to me on the phone. I think she do nothing for a couple of weeks. Life in Scotland be a big change for her.
LINDA: Yes, I suppose you're right. I make some dinner for her?
DAVID: 4 she want dinner? It's almost 10 o'clock. I make her a sandwich, if she's hungry.
LINDA: OK. we listen to some music? Her train may be late.
DAVID: She phone if it's very late.
LINDA: she get a taxi from the station? (Someone knocks on the door.) That's her. I go.
BETH: Hi Mum, Dad!
LINDA: Beth! How are you, love? I take your bags?
BETH: Thanks, Mum, but I carry the big one. It's very heavy.
DAVID: It's great to see you, Beth. You look well. we have a cup of tea?

F Deciding what to do on a night out by email

Read Mia's email and Alfie's reply. Use the verbs in brackets to form phrases with will or shall.

Hi Alfie

Shall we go (we/go) out tomorrow night? Do you want to go to the pub or (we/do) something different? (I/be) busy until 7 p.m., but I could meet you in town afterwards, if you like. (you/see) Santiago tomorrow at college? It would be nice to meet him again. (I/ask) Katie too? I'm sure (I/see) her some time during the day.

Hi Mia

Thanks for your message. (we/see) a film? I think (CIA Blues'/be) good. It's a sort of comedy. (Santiago/not be) in college tomorrow. He's got an interview in London. (I/call) him in the afternoon, but I'm sure (he/stay) in London with his father for a couple of days. Yes, it would be good to see Katie. By the way, thanks very much for the book. It was great. I finished it yesterday. (I/bring) it with me tomorrow?

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 123.
Questions

Yes/No questions; where, when, why, how

1 There are two types of question:
   - Yes/No questions, where the answer is Yes or No:
     Do you eat meat? ~ Yes, I do.
     Have you seen Holly? ~ No, I haven't.
   - Questions with question words (what, when etc.), where many answers are possible:
     Where are you from? ~ Cuba/Japan/France etc.

2 We make questions with be, have and modal verbs (e.g. will, shall, can) like this:

   (question word) + be/have/modal + subject
   
   Did you enjoy the meal?
   Who did you talk to?

3 Question words (1)
   - We use where to ask about places:
     Where are you going? ~ To Morocco.
   - We use when to ask about times and dates:
     When did you finish work today?
   - We use why to ask about reasons/motives:
     Why was Joan crying? ~ I'm not sure.
   - We use how to ask 'in what way?':
     How are you going to get to Paris? ~ By train.
   - We also use how + an adjective/adverb to ask for exact information:
     How old is your daughter? ~ She's seven.
     How often have you been to the USA? ~ Twice.

   How far did you walk this morning?
   How many brothers and sisters have you got?
   How much will it cost? ~ Twenty pounds.

   → For more on question words, see p. 48.

Grammar in action

1 We use why to get extra information about people:
   Why did you stay at home yesterday? (= I know you were at home, but I'd like more information.)
   We use how to get extra information about the way people do things:
   How did you get home so quickly? (= I know you got home, but I'd like more information.)

2 We use where and when to get information on places, times and dates. We can use where when we meet people for the first time, or arrive in new places:
   Where shall we eat tonight?
   We can use when to talk about train and plane times.
   We can also use it to talk about the start of an event or people's routines:
   When did your plane arrive? ~ At 8.30 p.m.
   When do you usually go to bed? ~ About eleven.
   When are you going to start college?

3 We use how + an adjective/adverb to get exact information about people's families, and about prices and distances:
   How often do you see your grandparents?
   How much was that blue jumper in the window?

A Getting extra information

Mike and John are on holiday. Mike stops their car, and they get out. Add How or Why and one more word to the beginning of the questions.

JOHN  ... Why have ... 0 we stopped, Mike?
MIKE  Because I ate a fantastic meal at a restaurant near here three years ago. Come on!
JOHN  All right. ...................... 1 you walking so fast?
MIKE  The restaurant closes at 3 p.m.
JOHN  ...................... 2 we going to find it, Mike? We haven't got a map.
MIKE  (Fifteen minutes later.) Look, there's a river. We're almost there.
JOHN  ...................... 3 you know?
MIKE  I remember the river.
JOHN: Did you cross the river three years ago?
MIKE: There was a bridge. Are you asking so many questions?
JOHN: Because we're lost. (He sees a man.) Excuse me, but where do we get to the 'Hungry Bear' restaurant?
MAN: Do you want to go there? The restaurant closed two years ago.

B Arriving in a new place; asking about times and routines

Ingrid is arriving at a yoga centre in Scotland. Put the words in brackets in the right order to make questions, adding where, when or nothing (for Yes/No questions).

INGRID: Hi. I'm Ingrid. I'm looking for Mrs Miller.
CLARE: Oh. She'll be here soon. Where have you come from, Ingrid?
(INGRID: Israel. I took a plane today, and then I drove here.)
CLARE: Seven o'clock. Oh dear. You look tired.
(INGRID: Five o'clock, so I'm looking forward to my bed.)
CLARE: In that brown tepee by the river. It's very comfortable.
(INGRID: No, I haven't. And I/sleep going to/am)
CLARE: In the cottage.
(INGRID: Yes, I've got two in my bag.)
CLARE: Tomorrow morning. I think they've gone to sleep.
(INGRID: I can see Mrs Miller tomorrow.)
CLARE: Yes, that's a good idea.

C Getting exact information

Katerina is emailing Susi. After the example, add the following words to the message. There is one word that you don't need to use. Use capital letters where necessary.

Much old far many is are did going

Hi Susi

Did you have a good time at the shops? Did you at home now? How many new CDs did you get? Jess says you're going to go jogging later. That sounds good, but how far are you going to run? I'll come with you, if you're only going to run a couple of miles. By the way, how old is your laptop? It's quite new, isn't it? My laptop is OK, but my brother thinks you need to buy a new one every year! How did you pay for yours? Anyway, it's time to go. I've got some French homework to do.

Love, Katerina
Questions
What, which, who, whose; short answers

4 Question words (2)
We normally use what to ask about things:
What's his mobile phone number?
But we prefer to use which, if there is only a small number of possible answers:
which pizza do you want - the big or the little one?
~ The little one. I'm not very hungry.

We normally use who to ask about people:
who was Jon speaking to? ~ His sister, I think.

And we use whose to ask who something belongs to:
whose coat is this? ~ It's Pete's.

5 Short answers
When we reply to yes/no questions, it's polite to use short answers:
Do you live near college? ~ Yes, I do.

We form short answers by only using the first part of the verb in our reply:
Did you go to the bank? ~ Yes, I did go to the bank.
Does he speak Greek? ~ No, he doesn't speak Greek.
Have you finished? ~ Yes, I have finished.
Will they win? ~ No, they won't win.
Are you hungry? ~ Yes, I am hungry.
Were your exams OK? ~ No, they weren't OK.
Is she leaving? ~ Yes, she is leaving.

Grammar in action
4 We can use what and which to get information on the things we see around us, in shops, in the street, or in restaurants:
What is he going to sell? ~
Watches, I think.

5 We can use what and which to get information about friends and the people we meet:
Which flat will she buy? ~ The one on the top floor.

6 We normally use who and whose to get more information about people and their possessions:
Whose bag is this?
Who did you know at the party? ~
No one!

D A party in Tokyo

Julie has just started work for an American bank in Tokyo. The bank is having a party, and Julie goes with her husband. Look at the questions people ask her, and give short answers.

0 Do you like Tokyo? ~ Yes, I do. (yes/I)
1 Was your flight here comfortable? ~ Yes, it was. (yes/it)
2 Are you enjoying the party? ~ Yes, I am. (yes/I)
3 Does your husband speak any Japanese? ~ No, he doesn't. (no/ he)
4 Have you visited Mount Fuji yet? ~ Yes, I have. (yes/ we)
5 Are you going to visit other parts of Japan? ~ Yes, I am. (yes/ we)
6 Has your husband met your boss yet? ~ Yes, he has. (yes/ he)
7 Will you buy a flat in Tokyo? ~ No, we won't. (no/ we)
8 Do you like Japanese food? ~ Yes, I do. (yes/I)
9 Do you have any children? ~ No, we don't. (no/ we)
E At a food market

Anne and Gary and their friends, Pierre and Isabelle, are at a food market. Put the words in the right order. Start your questions with what, which, who, whose or, for yes/no questions, nothing.

**ANNE** Is that Gary over there? **Who is he speaking to?** (speaking to/is/he)

**PIERRE** A woman on a stall.

**ANNE** Oh. .......................................................... (he/buy/to/going/is)

**PIERRE** I don't know. (do/at this market/normally buy/you)

**ANNE** Everything! Look at that lovely bread, for example!

**PIERRE** Yes, that's a good idea.

**MAN** Hello, darling. .......................................................... (loaves/want/do/you) - the white or the brown ones?

**ANNE** The white ones, please. (have/isabelle/seen/you), Pierre? Perhaps I'll give her a ring.

**PIERRE** I spoke to her five minutes ago.

**ANNE** Really? .......................................................... (say/did/she) Wait a moment, Pierre. There's something on the ground. *(She picks up a phone.)*

**PIERRE** Isabelle's. Oh dear.

**MAN** Excuse me. .......................................................... (you/looking for/are)

**ANNE** His girlfriend, Isabelle. She's wearing a long white coat.

**MAN** Don't worry. I can see her. She's at the fish stall over there.

F A car journey to North Wales

Linda and Roger are driving their children, Jessica and Marc, to a holiday cottage in North Wales. Put a circle around the correct question words.

**LINDA** Are you OK, Marc? **Which**/What/Why/When 9 did Jessica do?

**MARC** She ate my chocolate. **Where/When/Why/How** 1 far is the cottage now?

**LINDA** Fifty miles or so. **Who/Why/Whose/How** 2's got the map?

**ROGER** I have, I think. **Why/What/Where/Who** 3 did you put my glasses, though?

**LINDA** **What/Which/Whose/Where** 4 glasses are you looking for, your sunglasses or your reading glasses?

**ROGER** My reading glasses, of course, for the map!

**LINDA** I think they're in the pocket of your jacket, dear.

**ROGER** Thanks. **When/Which/What/Whose** 5 shall we stop for some lunch, Linda?

**LINDA** In half an hour? **Where/Who/Why/How** 6 were you shouting, Marc?

**MARC** Jessica took my ball.

**ROGER** Are you sure? **When/Who/How/Whose** 7 is that ball by the window?

**MARC** Oh, yes. It's mine. But I'm hungry. **Which/What/When/Whose** 8 time is it, Dad?

**ROGER** Half past eleven.

**MARC** Are we nearly there?

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 123.
13 Can
Ability and possibility

1 Here are some examples of can:
She can speak French and Arabic.
I can’t come with you tonight, I’m afraid.
Can I have a small black coffee, please?

2 We form sentences with can like this:
can + verb
I can see Tom’s car.

POSITIVE
I/he/she/it/we/you/they can help.
NEGATIVE
I/he/she/it/you etc. cannot/can’t help.
QUESTIONS
Can I/he/she/it/you etc. use your phone, please?

We write the negative form cannot as one word, but we use can’t when we speak or write informally.

3 We use can to talk about our skills (our general abilities):
I can sing, but I can’t play the piano.

4 We sometimes use can with see, hear and smell to talk about things we are able to do right now:
Can you see Milly anywhere?

5 We use can to talk about things that are (not) possible:
We can call a taxi, or we can get a bus.

Grammar in action

1 We use can to talk about our skills. Here we’re thinking about people’s abilities at work:
I know she can do anything on the computer, but can she work with other people?
He can’t type quickly, but he would like to learn.

2 We use can to talk about the things we see, hear or smell right now. We might write a postcard describing our experiences on holiday:
I can hear the sea from my balcony.
I can see the beach from my room.
The food at the local market looks delicious, but I’ve got a cold - I can’t smell anything.

3 We use can to talk about the things that are possible or not possible in our daily lives. Here, we’re thinking about our plans for the week:
Can you finish work early tomorrow?
I can go to the gym with you on Sunday, but I can’t come to the cinema on Wednesday.

A Talking about our skills

Alida from Hungary is spending a month in America with Grace, Ryan and their five-year old son, Mickey. Add can in positive, negative or question form to the words in brackets, and complete the conversation.

GRACE Ryan is going to make some special hamburgers for us tonight.
Can you cook? (you/cook), Alida?

ALIDA .................................................. (I/make) a nice salad, but .............................................. (I/not/do) any interesting Hungarian dishes, I’m afraid. They’re too difficult.

MICKEY .............................................. (you/play) basketball or baseball, Alida?

GRACE Say ‘no’, Alida, or you’ll spend every day in the garden with Mickey.

ALIDA .............................................. (I/not/play) basketball or baseball, Mickey, but .............................................. (I/skate).

MICKEY On ice? That’s fantastic! .............................................. (you/play) snooker too, Alida?
We’ve got a new snooker table!

ALIDA No, I can’t, I’m afraid.
B Talking about the things we can see, hear and smell

Amelia and Karen are going to look after Harry's house by the sea while he is in hospital. Put the words in brackets in the right order, and add them to the conversation. Use capital letters where necessary.

KAREN It's dark in here. **I can't see anything** (anything/I/see/can't). Can you put the light on?

AMELIA OK. It's very quiet. Listen. **I hear the sea** (the sea/hear/can/you)?

KAREN The kitchen's not very clean, is it? (see/you/a kettle/can) anywhere? I'd like a cup of tea.

AMELIA Shall we have some orange juice? (a lot of/can/old newspapers/see/I), but (any cups/can't/I/see) or a kettle at the moment.

KAREN OK, but are you sure we're the only people here? (hear/a noise/can/I) in the next room.

AMELIA (I/anything/hear/can't). Perhaps you're tired.

KAREN No, I'm not. And (you/fish/smell/can)? I'm going to have a look.

AMELIA Well, (you/anything/see/can)?

KAREN Yes, there's a small black cat here, and it's eating fish from a plate!

C Talking about the things that are (not) possible in our daily lives

Sue is emailing Max on Friday evening. Add the words *can* or *can't* to these two messages. You will need to add three words to each message.

(i) Hi Max,
I tried to speak to you at work today, but you were busy. I know you're working hard right now, but **can** we meet on Monday evening, perhaps? We could have something to eat. I see you at the weekend, because I'm going to visit my dad in Wales. He's ninety now. He get to the shops every day, so he always has enough to eat, but he do all the jobs around the house. Anyway, email or ring me!

Sue

(ii) Hi Sue,
Thanks for your message. I see you on Monday evening, because I'm flying to Sweden on business on Monday morning, but thanks for asking me. I do something with you next weekend, though. Do you want to see a film or go for a walk? I know I'm working too hard at the moment, but I stop because this is my first big project, and my boss is watching me! I hope your weekend with your dad is OK.

Max
Can
Requests, offers, and permission

6 We use can to ask for things (make requests):
   Can I borrow your pen, please?
and to offer to do things:
   Can I take you to the station?

TIP
We don’t use please with offers:
   I can meet you at the airport, please.
   Can I help you, please?

7 We use can to talk about permission and rules (things
   we must or must not do):
   Can we play football here?
   You can't eat inside.

Grammar in action
4 We use can to make simple requests with friends
   and family. Here a father is talking to his daughter:
   Can you speak to your mother before you leave?
   Can you ring me when you get to Paris?

D Making requests and offers at a friend’s house

James is staying in Hanoi with Tam and Minh. Add these phrases to their conversation:

| Can you take some books | I can make some food | Can you pass me |
| Can I give them | I can take you | Can I do anything |
| Can you bring | Can I help |

JAMES Can you pass me the rice, please?
TAM Sure. You need to eat before your journey. to the station on my bike in the morning.
JAMES That’s very kind of you, Tam.
MINH And for you to take. The food on the train is terrible!
JAMES Thank you very much. for you while I’m in Ho Chi Minh city?
TAM Actually, there is something. I could post them, but it takes a long time.
JAMES No problem.
TAM Thanks. to you now? I’ll forget in the morning!
JAMES Of course! with anything else?
TAM Well, if you’re sure it’s no trouble, my blue suitcase back from my sister’s house? She borrowed it when she moved.
JAMES It’s not a problem. I’m pleased to be able to help.
E  Making requests and offers at a hotel

James is talking to a member of staff, Tran, in a business hotel in Ho Chi Minh city. Look at the example, and then cross out six more wrong words in the conversation.

TRANG  Good evening, sir. Can I can help you?
JAMES  Yes, I hope so. Can you I have a single room for two nights, please?
TRANG  Of course, sir. I can have give you a room on the top floor, if you like. You'll have a great view!
JAMES  That's fine, thanks.
TRANG  Can you fill in this form, please?
JAMES  Sure. Can I I buy pay by credit card?
TRANG  Of course, sir. No problem. Can you I I see your card now, please?
JAMES  Here it is. By the way, is it possible to use the internet here?
TRANG  Certainly, sir. The business lounge is on the seventeenth floor. You can check your email there at any time, but you can can't send faxes after 10 p.m. Now, can I I show see your passport, please?

F  In a sports clothes shop in Manchester

We use can to talk about our skills; the things we see and hear; the things that are and aren't possible in our daily lives; and to make requests and offers at home and in public places. Hideo and Lily are talking to an assistant, Adam, in a sports clothes shop in Manchester. Add the following phrases, using capital letters where necessary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I can</th>
<th>I can't</th>
<th>can I (x 2)</th>
<th>can you (x 3)</th>
<th>you can't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADAM Hi, can I help you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIDEO Yes, please. try these trainers on? I'm size forty-three or forty-four.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADAM Certainly. bring both sizes if you like. I'll be back in a couple of minutes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIDEO Thanks. Have you found anything, Lily?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LILY Perhaps, see those ski jackets in the corner? The red ones?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIDEO Sure, but ski?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LILY No, but they look good. play football, Hideo, but you sometimes wear a Manchester United shirt, don't you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIDEO That's true. How much are the jackets?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LILY A hundred and fifty quid. buy one at the moment. I don't have enough money. But they're having a sale here after Christmas.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIDEO wait?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LILY I suppose so, but it's a hard life, isn't it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 124.
Some examples of could:
Could you tell me the time, please?
The car's not working, but we could take a taxi.
Ellen couldn't meet us at lunchtime.

We form sentences with could like this:
could + verb
We could go to the cinema.

Could l/he/she/it/you/we/they use your phone, please?

Could l/he/she/it/you/you etc. come.

Could l/he/she/it/you etc. say something?

Could is the past form of can, but we often use it to make polite requests in present time:
Could I have some water, please? ~ Of course.
Could you shut the door? I'm cold.

We use could to make polite requests in public places. We might ask for directions on the street, or make a request in a restaurant, hotel or bank:
Could you tell me the way to the town centre, please? ~ Yes, of course. It's straight ahead.

We use could to make suggestions when we're deciding what to do. Here, we're thinking about the weekend:
What shall we do this weekend? ~ We could go for a walk by the sea. ~ OK. I could make some sandwiches for a picnic.

We sometimes use could and couldn't to talk about our ability to do things a long time ago:
I could swim ten kilometres when I was at school.
People couldn't go to New York for a weekend when I was a child.

A Making polite requests in public places

Lance and Petra are walking along a street in Alice Springs, Australia. Put the words in the right order, and add polite requests. Use a capital letter at the beginning of the requests, and a question mark at the end.

PETRA I'm thirsty, Lance. I'm going to get something from this lady.
Could I have a bottle of water, please? (have/a bottle of water, please/l/could)

LADY Sure. Here you are. That's 75 cents, please. Are you going anywhere nice?

LANCE Yes. We're going to Ayers Rock. (tell us/to the bus station, please/could/the way/you) I think we turn left here.

LADY Yes, you do. Walk all the way along Spring Street, and then cross Todd River. Bye!
(Later, at the travel centre at the bus station.)

PETRA (we/about the trip/some information/have/to Ayers Rock, please/could)

MAN Of course. We have a special offer at the moment – 98 dollars for a return ticket.

LANCE Excellent. (a timetable, please/could/us/you/give)

PETRA There's a bus early in the morning, isn't there?

MAN That's right. There's one at seven thirty. Here's the timetable.

LANCE Seven thirty is perfect. (have/for tomorrow, please?/we/two return tickets/could)
**B  Making suggestions with friends and family**

Francesca and Sean are going to spend the weekend in Newquay in Cornwall. The word *could* is missing from Francesca’s email. After the example, put ‘/’ six more times where *could* is missing.

Hi Sean,

Thanks very much for your message. I’m glad you’re free at the weekend. We / drive to Newquay around ten in the morning. It takes about four hours from my house. I bring some sandwiches. We’ll be hungry before we get there. In the afternoon we cycle along Watergate Bay, perhaps.

It’s beautiful there. You take some fantastic photos with your new camera! Then, in the evening, we eat at ‘Mickey’s’, if you like, the small fish restaurant in Newquay. It’s very popular, so I reserve a table before we go. I’ve booked two rooms at the Sandy Beach Hotel, of course. My friends Dave and Connie stay there every summer. They love it. Then, on Sunday we visit Sheila and Michael. They live in Exeter, on our way home. What do you think?

Best wishes,

Francesca

---

**C  Talking about our abilities when we were younger**

Bill is having coffee with his grandson, Jake, and his old friend, Lewis. Add the following phrases to their conversation, using capital letters where necessary:

- you couldn’t change
- some English people could go
- I could run
- you could buy
- we could only stay
- we couldn’t travel
- I could play all day

**BILL** How are you, Lewis? You look well.

**LEWIS** Really? I played tennis for an hour this morning, and I don’t feel well! When I was Jake’s age, I could play all day.°

**BILL** I know. † along the road for hours and hours when I was at college. Now I’m tired after a short walk!

**LEWIS** Anyway, how are you, Jake? Bill says you’re spending your gap year in China and south-east Asia. You’re lucky. When we were fifteen or sixteen we left school, and we went to work.‡ across the world.

**JAKE** But § to Spain and Greece in those days. I’ve read books by English writers who travelled in Europe in the 1950s.

**BILL** That’s true. In fact, I took a train to Italy when I was twenty. But § for a week or ten days, not for a year.

**LEWIS** Then we started work, and many of us worked for the same company all our lives!

**BILL** That’s right. § jobs easily in those days.

**JAKE** But at least § a house, Grandad. They’re too expensive for young people now.

**LEWIS** That’s true. Some things are more difficult these days, Bill.
Could, was able to, managed to
Couldn’t, was able to, managed to: ability in the past

4 Some examples of couldn’t, was able to, and managed to:
I couldn’t go to Kate’s party.
We were able to sell the house quickly.
Joe managed to find a cheap CD player.

5 When we talk about our ability to do something at a particular moment in the past, we can use couldn’t:
I couldn’t park the car anywhere in the centre of town this morning.
They couldn’t find a hotel with a sea view.
But we can’t normally use could:
We could get two tickets for the concert.

Instead, we use was/were able to or managed to:
We were able to get two tickets for the concert.
I managed to speak to Nancy at the party.

6 We form positive sentences with was/were able to like this:
was/were able to + verb
He was able to go.
They were able to go.

And we form sentences with managed to like this:
managed to + verb
We managed to finish.

Grammar in action
4 We use was/were able to, managed to and couldn’t to talk about our ability at particular moments in the past. Here, we’re talking about last weekend:
We were able to get a table at that new French restaurant on Friday, and I managed to finish all my college work on Saturday, but we couldn’t go for a walk on Sunday because it rained all day.

D Talking about last week
Holly and Eva are having a meal together on Sunday evening in their flat. Add the correct phrases to the conversation.

HOLLY Did you have a good week, Eva?
EVA Not bad, thanks. ...I was able to talk... (I was able talk/I was able to talk) to my boss about my trip to Paris. She’s normally so busy. ...

(We were able to finish/We able to finish) my schedule of meetings.

HOLLY That’s great. When do you leave?
EVA ... (We were managed to book/We managed to book) a flight for 1 p.m on Tuesday. I’m looking forward to it. What about your week?

HOLLY It was OK. ...

(We couldn’t to sleep/I couldn’t sleep) at night at the beginning of the week, because it was so hot.

EVA I know. ...

(I managed to buy/I managed buy) a fan at the shops. You can borrow it when I’m in Paris, if you like. What about your room? Are you comfortable there now?

HOLLY Yes, thanks. ...

(I was able buy/I was able to buy) a beautiful new rug on Saturday, and my sister gave me a lamp. But ...

(I couldn’t find/I couldn’t to find) a mirror.

EVA Really? Have you tried the market? ...

(George managed to get/ George was managed to get) a coffee table there last year.

HOLLY No, I’ll have a look there tomorrow.
E  Moving flat

We use *could* for polite requests, suggestions, and general ability in the past. We use *was/were able to, managed to* and *couldn't* for past ability at particular moments. Add the following phrases to this email:

managed  could  couldn't  could sleep  managed to
could put  could eat  you help  could you  were able to

Hi Amy

I'm moving flat on Monday. Could you help me? On Friday I book a removals van, but I find any boxes in town. When I was a student, I put all my things in one box, but now I need ten! Anyway, I phoned my friend Jake yesterday morning, and we get some boxes from his sister — she moved flat a month ago. And in the afternoon, we to sell my old bed to Jake's brother for £20! He's going to start university in September. So I need to buy a new bed quickly. I on the floor for a week or two when I was younger, but not now! Anyway, I need some advice in the kitchen: I could take all my old plates, cups and knives and forks to the new flat, or I throw them away! What do you think? We a pizza afterwards, if you like. Look forward to hearing from you.

Best Wishes, Fred

F  A hospital visit

James and his daughter Kay are visiting Kay's sister, Jo, in hospital. Add the following words or phrases to the conversation:

managed  able  see  have  you  could  couldn't

JAMES  Hello. Could we see Jo Corrigan, please?
NURSE  I'm sorry, but you can't see her at the moment.
JAMES  Really? When my wife was in hospital in January, we were to visit her all the time.
NURSE  That's right, but at the moment we don't have enough nurses on the ward.
JAMES  I suppose we come back later, Kay.
NURSE  Could come back in an hour, perhaps?
KAY  But is she OK after the operation?
NURSE  Oh yes. She eat her dinner last night, but she have some breakfast this morning.
JAMES  Don't worry, Kay. We could a coffee in the hospital café. Thank you, nurse. We'll come back later.
Some examples of should:
You should learn some Chinese before you go to Beijing.
They should have a party in their new house.
Dan shouldn't play his music so loud.
Should I buy a new car?

We form sentences with should like this:

\[
\text{should + verb}
\]

You should have a holiday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/he/she/it/you etc. should read this book.</td>
<td>I/he/she/it/you etc. should not/shouldn't wait.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grammar in action

1. We use should to say if something is or isn't a good idea. Here, we're talking about travel plans:
   You should visit Japan in May or June. It's beautiful. (= It's a good idea for you to visit Japan.)
   She shouldn't travel everywhere by taxi.
   ( = It isn't a good idea for her to travel by taxi.)
   They shouldn't go by car. The train is much quicker.

2. We use You should/shouldn't... to give practical advice. You might talk to a friend about their work:
   You should relax more. You look tired.
   You shouldn't stay at the bank if you don't like your job there.
   You should take a lunch break every day.

   We sometimes use I instead of You to give advice:
   My wife and I are going to have dinner in Luigi's on Saturday night. ~ Really? I should book a table. It's very busy at the weekend.

A Saying if something is a good idea

Olivia and her husband Charlie are talking about their twins, Harvey and Emma. Complete their conversation by writing forms of should instead of the phrases in brackets.

CHARLIE After their exams Harvey and Emma will be free for eight weeks, before they go to university. They should find jobs. " (It's a good idea for them to find jobs.)
OLIVIA I'm not sure, Charlie. It isn't easy to get summer jobs these days, and they've worked so hard! They

(It's a good idea for them to have a holiday.)

CHARLIE For eight weeks? I don't think so, Olivia. Emma

(It's a good idea for Emma to talk to Uncle Jim.) Jim could give her a job at his shop. And Harvey could work in a hotel again.
OLIVIA But they

(But it isn't a good idea for them to work all the time.) It's our last family summer!

CHARLIE Perhaps you're right. We

(It's a good idea for us all to go to France for a couple of weeks.)

OLIVIA Yes, but we

(Yes, but it isn't a good idea for us to decide today.) We should talk to them first. They're both eighteen now!
B Giving advice on work, health and relationships

Mike is writing a letter to Rashid, the son of an Indian friend. Rashid is starting a course at a British university. Start the phrase in brackets with You should or You shouldn't, and then add it to the letter.

Dear Rashid,

I hope you had a good journey. Your father asked me to give you some advice about life at university. Well, first of all, in my opinion, you should do a budget. (do a budget), because life can become difficult if you don’t have any money! Next, (think about food). You can’t study if you don’t eat well. For example, (eat take-aways) every evening! They’re expensive, and they’re not very good for you. (go to your local shops) or the supermarket and buy simple, fresh food. Vegetables and some types of fish are very cheap.

Soon you’ll start your course. Your university work is important, but (study) all night! You’ll be tired in the morning. Instead, (make a timetable) for yourself, and work regularly.

After you’ve worked for three hours or so, (go for walk) or a swim. It’s important to get some fresh air!

It’s also important to meet people. (go out every night), because it’s expensive, but it’s a good idea to make new friends in the first month or two. Friends can help you when life is hard! Finally, if you need any more help or advice, (call me).

Yours truly,

Mike

C Saying something is a good idea and giving advice

Scott is phoning Eve at work. After the example, add should and shouldn’t three more times each, using /’/ and writing the correct word at the end of the line.

SCOTT Hi, Eve. It’s seven o’clock. Are you still at work?
EVE You/ring me at the office, Scott. I can’t talk right now. shouldn’t
SCOTT Have you got a headache again?
EVE Yes. It started this afternoon. I get a headache most days.
SCOTT Then you see a doctor.
EVE I know. I’ll go next week.
SCOTT Good. Anyway, it’s my birthday on Saturday. We have a party. What do you think?
EVE I’m not sure, Scott. I’m so busy at work at the moment.
SCOTT But you work at the weekend! Life is too short.
EVE Perhaps you’re right. But if we have a party, we cook anything. I’m too tired.
SCOTT That’s fine. We ring Max. He could bring some great cold food from his shop.
EVE OK, but we invite too many people. It’s too much work.
SCOTT I understand. Don’t worry, we’ll have a quiet party!
Should
Should I tell them?

3 Look at this dialogue:
Should I wear a suit tonight?
~ No, but I don't think you should wear jeans.

4 We form questions with should like this:
should + l/he/she/it/you etc. + verb
Should we buy some food?

Grammar in action

3 We use Should I...? Should we...? to ask for someone's opinion or advice. Here, we're making plans for a party:
Should I invite Sam and Meg, too? ~ You can, but Sam doesn't like parties.
Should we cook some food for our guests?
~ No. Crisps and peanuts will be OK.
Should I get some new CDs?
~ That's a good idea. We need some dance music.

D Asking for opinions or advice

Lauren and Robert are in a furniture shop, looking for things for their new house. Put the words in brackets in the right order, and add them to the conversation. Use capital letters and question marks where necessary. Get sometimes means buy.

LAUREN Should we buy a sofa (a sofa/we/buy/should) today, or (buy/should/an armchair/we), Robert?

ROBERT Well, this brown sofa looks nice. (try/we/it/should) (They sit on the sofa.)

LAUREN It's very comfortable, isn't it? (get/should/it/we) How much is it?

ROBERT I don't know. (ask/I/that assistant/should)

LAUREN I think he's busy at the moment with that couple, but there's some information on the table.

ROBERT I'll have a look. Oh! It's two thousand pounds! (go/to another shop/should/we)

LAUREN I think the prices will be the same.

ROBERT Really? (look/I/on the internet instead/should) It might be cheaper.

LAUREN But we need to get something today, because the house is so empty!

ROBERT Well, (a wardrobe/should/we/buy/do you think) or a chest of drawers for the bedroom, then?

LAUREN Perhaps, or (should/a coffee table/get/we) for the living room?

ROBERT Let's have a look upstairs!
E  Making plans for a visit to Britain

We use should to say if something is a good idea, to give advice, and to ask for someone's opinion. Bob, from America, is emailing his friend Sally. Add the phrases below to the messages, but there is one phrase you won't need.

\[
\begin{array}{llllllll}
\text{think you} & \text{should I} & \text{don't think} & \text{you should} & \text{I visit} \\
\text{should go} & \text{shouldn't try} & \text{should you} & \text{fly} & \text{should take}
\end{array}
\]

Hi Sally,
As I said in my last message, I'll arrive in the UK on 4 September, and I can stay for two weeks. I'll spend two days in London with you, but then I'm not sure. Should I fly to Scotland first, and see Edinburgh and the Highlands, or hire a car and drive to Wales? And I want to see Liverpool too! And what about the old cities like Bath and Oxford and York? Should they too? Help me, please!

Hi Bob,
You to do everything! You don't have time! should travel by train, because you can relax and see things as you travel. First, you the train from London to York. It only takes two hours, so you can spend the rest of the day looking at the city. to Edinburgh next. It's a nice journey with views of Durham, Newcastle and the sea on the way. There's a lot to see in Edinburgh, but you should stay too long, because I know you want to see the Highlands. So, after a couple of days, take the train to Inverness, where you can hire a car and see the mountains! Finally, you can fly down from Inverness to Liverpool in an hour, and then take the train back to London. What do you think?

F  Staying in Manchester

Despina has just finished an English summer course in Manchester. She's been living with Rachel and Sean. The word should is missing from the conversation. After the example, put ' should be missing five more times where should is missing.

RACHEL You know that Despina wants to stay longer in Manchester, don't you, Sean?
SEAN Yes. I think it's a good idea for her. She / look for a room or a small flat.
RACHEL Yes, but she doesn't know the city very well, so we help her? (Despina arrives home.)
DESPIANA Hi Rachel, Sean! I've found a great photography course at the university, but my mother wants me to return to Greece. What do I do?
RACHEL How long is the course, Despina?
DESPIANA Six months. Do you think I find a different course in Athens?
RACHEL No, but I think you speak to your mother today or tomorrow.
SEAN You tell her that your course is only six months long, Despina, and that you'll go home for Christmas!

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 124.
16 Must and have to
I must or I have to

1 Look at these examples of must and have to:
I must get up earlier. I'm always late for work. We have to turn right here for the city centre.

2 We form positive sentences with must like this:

must + verb
I must phone my sister this evening.

POSITIVE
I/he/she/it/we/they must wash the car today.

3 We form positive sentences with have to like this:

has/have to + verb
We have to show our passports here.

POSITIVE
I/you/we/they have to go now.

4 We use must and have to to say that something is necessary - or a very good idea - now or in the future:
You must visit India one day! It's fantastic. George has to go to New York on business.

Grammar in action

1 We use You must... or Visitors etc. must... in written rules in public places, on forms or on signs:
All visitors must go to Reception. Passengers must wear their seatbelts during take-off. You must bring a passport photo of yourself.

2 We use must for things that we decide are necessary. Here, we're talking about our studies:
I must finish my essay tonight. I don't understand this book. I must talk to my teacher tomorrow.

3 We use have to to talk about things that are already arranged, such as the way we do our jobs, regulations in general, and appointments:
We have to wait here for a taxi. I have to start work at 8 a.m.

4 We often use have got to in conversations and in informal writing to talk about things we need to do. We might need to make some changes in our lives:
I've got to get a new flat. It's so noisy where I live! ~ Really? My flat's OK, but I'm so bored at work. I've got to find a new job.

A Written rules in public places

Daniela is an Italian exchange student at a British university. Match the phrases on the left with a letter to complete the rules she reads on her first day.

0 On arrival, all new students must go... ...... c. ......at 4 p.m. in the Main Hall.
1 You must carry... ............ a. ....must bring a letter from their home university with them.
2 Exchange students... ............ b. ....to the Campus Office on the first floor.
3 New students must attend the lecture... ............ c. .......your new ID cards with you all the time.
4 If you are not sure about your course... ............ d. ......you must talk to a Senior Lecturer today.

Tip
We use short forms of have + got to + verb instead of must or have to in informal English:
I've got to go to the supermarket later.
Things we decide are necessary, work and appointments.

In the phone conversation below, use must with the words in brackets in all Dave's lines, and have to in all Shannon's lines.

DAVE  Hi Shannon, how are you? We must meet 0 (we/meet) soon. I haven’t seen you for a month at least.

SHANNON I'm fine, Dave, but I can't see you on Saturday. I have to do 0 (I/do) some work for my new boss. What about Sunday lunch?

DAVE Good idea, but I must (I/speak) to Mike first. He wants some help in his garden on Sunday.

SHANNON Really? But he's going to sell his house because he's going to move to South Africa next month.

DAVE That's right, but if the garden looks nice, he may get more money! But we do 3 (we/do) something this weekend, Shannon. What about a film on Sunday evening?

SHANNON I'm afraid not, Dave. I'm meeting 4 (I/meet) a colleague from our New York office at the airport.

DAVE OK, but it's my birthday next weekend, so I have to 5 (we/have) a meal together on Saturday.

SHANNON Sure. I go 6 (I/go) to the dentist's in the morning, but I'm free for the rest of the day.

C Talking about things we need to do

Fran meets Tim, an old friend, in the street. In the lines with numbers at the end, correct or improve the text by writing out a short form of have got to and underlining the place where it should go, as in the example.

FRAN Hi there, Tim! Nice to see you! How's life? Are you still painting?

TIM Yes, but I find a job this week, because I don't have any money. What about you? Are you OK? I've got to find 0.

FRAN I'm OK, but my mother is ill, so I return to America. 1

TIM Oh, I'm sorry. I hope she gets better.

FRAN I'm sure she will, but she listen to her doctor. She won't stay in bed! 2

TIM If you like, I'll give you one of my paintings to take to her.

FRAN That's kind, Tim, but you sell your paintings, if you want to make money! 3

TIM I know. Anyway, how are your brother and his wife? I haven't seen them recently.

FRAN They're fine, thanks. They've just bought a big, new house in the south of London, and now they find some furniture for it. 4

TIM Do they want a big painting for their living room?

FRAN That's a good idea. I'll talk to them. But I go now. I'm going to buy my plane ticket this morning. 5
Must and have to
I mustn’t or I don’t have to; Do I have to go?

5 Look at these examples:
You mustn’t smoke in the office.
You don’t have to cook tonight, because Steve is going to bring some fish and chips.
Do we have to leave the party now?

6 We form negative sentences with must like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/he/she/it/you etc. must not / mustn’t be late!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 We form negative sentences with have to like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/he/she/it/you etc. do not/don’t have to go.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We don’t have to stay here all night.
She doesn’t have to go to work today.

8 There is an important difference in meaning between mustn’t and don’t/doesn’t have to. Mustn’t means that something is a bad idea, or is wrong:
You mustn’t use a dictionary in the exam.

Don’t/doesn’t have to means that something is not necessary (i.e. you don’t need to do it):
You don’t have to buy me a birthday present.

9 We also use have to to ask questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do I/you/we/they have to get ready now?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does he/she/it have to go to Moscow?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do I have to meet Sam at the airport? (= Is it necessary for me to meet Sam at the airport?)

**Must** is possible for questions, e.g. Must we finish this today? but not as common as have to.

Grammar in action

5 We use mustn’t to say that something is a bad idea, or is wrong. Here, we’re going on holiday:
I know we’re late, but you mustn’t drive so fast. It’s dangerous. (on the way to the airport)
I mustn’t forget my passport.

6 We use don’t/doesn’t have to to say that something is not necessary. We might be at a party:
We don’t have to get a taxi home. Tom’s going to take us by car.
Greg doesn’t have to sleep on the sofa, because the little bedroom upstairs is free.

7 We use Do/Does... have to to ask if something is necessary. Here, we’re at a hotel:
Do I have to pay more for a double room?
Do we have to leave before 12 p.m?

D Wrong or unnecessary things at a new job

Luca, Head Waiter at ‘Pasta! Pasta!’, is talking to Hugo on his first day at work. Add mustn’t or don’t have to.

‘First of all, you start work at 6 p.m. and you mustn’t be late. Never! But you take a bus home, because we’ll book you a taxi. OK? And you work on Mondays, because the restaurant is closed! You see? We’re nice people here! Now, what about clothes? Well, you wear jeans. They’re not very smart, are they? But you wear a black jacket - we will give you a nice white shirt instead every evening. Now, what’s next? Oh yes. This will make you happy. You know anything about wine, because we have our own wine waiter, Giuseppe. OK, let’s talk about the guests. Sometimes they can be difficult, but rule number one is that you argue with the customers! They are paying for everything here! OK, I think that’s everything. You’ll meet Mr Locatelli, the boss, tomorrow. He’s a nice man, but remember, you talk when the boss is talking. He doesn’t like that. Oh, I forgot something nice, Hugo. You cook your own meal in the evening anymore, because we will give you some pasta to take home! Fantastic!’
E  What’s necessary to travel by train?

Susan is at the Eurostar office at Waterloo station. Write out the questions that Susan asks, using the form Do/Does... have to...? and the words in brackets.

SUSAN  Hello. My husband and I would like to travel from London to Avignon next month. Do we have to buy a ticket soon?   (we/buy a ticket soon), and .......                     (we/get the ticket at Waterloo)

MAN  Well, you can buy tickets here or on the Internet, but you should reserve them soon.

SUSAN  OK, we’ll get two returns tomorrow. ...............................................  (we/change in Paris)

MAN  No, you can get a train that goes directly to Avignon.

SUSAN  Thanks. ...............................................  (we/choose our date of return tomorrow)

MAN  It’s cheaper if you do.

SUSAN  OK, I understand. Now, my husband is sixty-one years old. ...............................................  (he/pay the full price)

MAN  No, it’s cheaper for senior citizens. The exact price depends on when you travel.

SUSAN  Good. Now, I’m a vegetarian. ...............................................  (I/bring my own food) Or is there vegetarian food on the train?

MAN  There’s one vegetarian meal on the menu every day.

SUSAN  OK. One last question. ...............................................  (we/arrive early for our train)

MAN  You should get here half an hour before it leaves.

SUSAN  Thanks. That’s great. Oh, I nearly forgot! ...............................................  (we/to take our passports)

MAN  Yes, Madam. They’ll look at your passports in France in the normal way.

F  Staying in a friend’s house

We use must for important things; mustn’t for things that are a bad idea; have to for arrangements; and don’t have to for things that are not necessary. Henry is going to live in Sarah’s house in the village of Greenleaf, while she goes to France. Read her letter to him, and circle the correct phrase from the brackets.

Dear Henry

Thanks very much for looking after my house. Here are some notes to help you!

- You mustn’t answer/don’t have to answer the telephone for me, because I have an answering machine.
- You mustn’t forget/don’t have to forget to lock the windows when you go out.
- You have to feed/mustn’t feed the cat twice a day – once in the morning, and again at night.
- You don’t have to eat/must eat the food in the fridge, or it will go bad. There’s some nice fish.
- You don’t have to water/mustn’t water the plants in the garden, because it rains all the time!
- You have to take/don’t have to take a bus to Haslemere, if you want to shop at a supermarket. There are only three small shops in Greenleaf.
- You don’t have to use/mustn’t use the washing machine, I’m afraid. It’s broken and dangerous!
- Finally, you must ring/don’t have to ring me if you have any problems. I’ll be happy to help!

With very best wishes,

Sarah

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 124.
The imperative
Come in!; Enjoy your holiday!

1 We use the infinitive without to (to enjoy) to form the imperative:

- Enjoy your holiday! Text me when you arrive.
- Show me your new jumper.
- Pass the milk, please.

2 The imperative can be one word only:

- Help!

but normally we use it with other words:

- Wait for me! I'm coming.
- Be careful! That case is very heavy.
- Follow me, please. I know the way to the museum.
- Come in, please.

Grammar in action

1 We use the imperative to ask or invite people to do things. Here, we’re making plans for the evening:

- Look at the sky. It's going to rain.
- I don't want to go out.
- Give me a ring later, Janet. I think we’re staying in tonight.
- Pass me the newspaper, please. I’ll see what's on TV.

2 We use the imperative to make offers and suggestions. Here, we're talking to guests:

- Have another biscuit!
- Help yourself to more coffee.
- Sit down and relax. Dinner will be ready in half an hour.

3 We use the imperative to finish conversations:

- Call me when you get there!
- Have a nice weekend!
- Take care!

Remember that in some situations (restaurants, for example) the imperative (with or without please) is not a polite way to talk to people - because it sounds like an order!

Could you get me a glass of water, please?
(Not Get me a glass of water, please.)

A Asking and inviting people to do things

Mike is visiting Sue and Bill. Complete the dialogue, by rewriting the words in brackets. Use capital letters when you need to.

Mike! ___________ (in and get warm/come) How are you?

SUE Mike! ________

MIKE I’m fine thanks, Sue. It’s a cold day, isn’t it?

SUE Freezing. But it's warm in here. ___________________________ 1 (coat and gloves/me your/give) Where's Jan?

MIKE She's not very well, I'm afraid, so I've come on my own.

SUE Oh dear. Well, ___________________________ 2 (give/my best wishes/her) I hope she's better soon. ___________________________ 3 (by the fire/have a seat). Bill will be down in a minute. I've just made some coffee, Mike. Would you like a cup?

MIKE Thanks very much. You're right - it's nice and warm in here.

SUE Here you are. ___________________________ 4 (yourself/to sugar and milk/help)

MIKE Thanks. ___________________________ 5 (outside at/look/the weather). It's just started to snow!

SUE Oh dear. It's good to be inside on a day like this. ___________________________ 6 (try/with your coffee/my fruitcake)

MIKE Thanks. It looks delicious. What have you been doing then, Sue?

__________________________ 7 (all your news/me/tell)
Finishing conversations

We often say goodbye with imperative sentences. Match beginnings with the endings to make some common examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>Don’t work...</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>Enjoy your...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Give my love...</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Don’t forget...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Give me a ring when...</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Look...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Have...</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Drive...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>Don’t work too hard...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>..................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>..................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>..................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>..................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

...to your parents. ...you get there. ...after yourself. ...too hard!

...holiday! ...carefully. ...a good journey! ...to email me.

Making suggestions and offers

Look at this advertisement for a hotel. Complete it by using these phrases:

- enjoy it
- relax in
- turn right at
- see the famous
- don’t forget
- have a swim
- eat all
- spend a couple
- forget our
- make yourself

Travelling to the office again?

Well, don’t forget that Friday will be here soon. Do you have any plans for the weekend? No? Don’t worry! We have. Come and 1 of days at the Northwick Spa Hotel. (Just drive up the M1 and 2 Junction 8.)

Start your weekend with a delicious meal on Friday night in our top-class restaurant, ‘Bellamy’s’. Or 3 the food you can in our Chinese buffet restaurant, ‘The Great Wall’! And on Saturday and Sunday, 4 at home in the hotel and gardens, or walk into the village of Norton and 5 castle.

But don’t 6 wonderful spa! Before you go back, 7 in our beautiful, warm pool or just 8 the jacuzzi or sauna. It’s your weekend, so 9! (Because Monday will soon be here again.)
The imperative

Don't forget!

3 We put don't in front of the imperative to form the negative:

Don't touch that plate! It's very hot.
Don't be late home. We're going out tonight.
Don't forget your camera!
Don't wait for me. I'll meet you at the restaurant.

4 We only use do not in formal situations:

Do not leave the room before the end of the exam, please.

At the zoo, you may see signs such as:

Do not feed the animals.

Grammar in action

4 We use the imperative to give instructions. We might tell someone how to find our house:

Turn right at the Post Office, and walk along Dean Road for about 100 metres. Don't cross the road.

My house is number 24.

5 We use the imperative to give warnings. Here, we're in town:

Be careful! Those plates look very expensive.
Don't cross now. There's a car coming!
Look out! That bus isn't going to stop!

6 We use the imperative to give advice. We might talk about the weather:

Take an umbrella with you - I'm sure it's going to rain. Don't listen to Tom. He's always wrong. It's going to be a beautiful day.

D Giving directions on a mobile phone

Lyn is giving Ann instructions and warnings about finding her new house. Make the verbs in brackets into positive or negative imperatives.

ANN Hi Lyn! I think I'm lost. I'm phoning you from St Mary's Church.
LYN Stay where you are. I'll come in the car.

ANN Don't move. (move).
LYN Wait a moment! I'm enjoying the fresh air, and I'd like to walk. Just tell me where to go.

ANN OK, if you're sure. In a moment, you'll see a little bridge on your right, but don't cross it! It's very old and dangerous. After you've passed the bridge, turn left.
LYN OK, I can see the bridge, and then a wood and a white house. Is that yours?

ANN Yes. (go) into the wood, though. It's very dark. You'll get lost.
LYN Just follow the road up the hill.

ANN OK, but Lyn, there's a big, black dog walking towards me. He looks angry.

ANN Oh dear. That's Ben. He's not very friendly, so don't touch him.

LYN Just stand still and enjoy the fresh air. I'll come with a biscuit.
**E First day at university**

Dr Sara Green is giving advice to new students. Add the following verbs to her advice. Use capital letters when you need to. There is one extra verb.

- lose
- work
- give
- decide
- go out
- spend
- talk
- be
- have
- stay

Welcome to the University of Yorkshire. Now, I’m sure you’ll enjoy the next three years with us, but if you need help at any time, talk to someone at the Student Services office - don’t just stay at home in bed! And be careful with your money in the first few weeks. How much you can spend every week, and don’t spend any more! Your studies, of course, will be the biggest part of your life. It’s hard and you’ll be OK. But don’t spend all your time on your essays. Have a break when you feel tired - now and again and make friends. You’ll meet students here from all over the world. And finally, please don’t lose your university ID! You’ll need it every day. Good luck, and have a fantastic first year!

**F A barbecue**

We use the imperative to ask people to do things; to make offers and suggestions; to finish conversations; to give instructions; to give warnings; and to give advice. Glenn and Nigel are having a barbecue. Add these phrases to their conversation:

**Don’t** eat | **Look at** | **Don’t go** | **Come into** | **But use** | **Put your** | **Have a**
---|---|---|---|---|---|---
GLENN Hi Molly! Come into the garden. Coat on this chair. Have you met Nigel?
NIGEL Nice to meet you, Molly. Glass of water or some orange juice. The food will be ready later.
MOLLY Thanks. I’ll have some juice, please. Wow! That barbecue! It’s very big!
NIGEL Hey Tom! That meat. It isn’t ready yet.
MOLLY Can I put a piece of bread on the fire? I want some toast.
NIGEL Well, all right. That big fork is too near the fire.

Now add these phrases:

- have some help yourself don’t eat don’t burn
- but ask be careful put it give Sally

GLENN Tom, help yourself! No, Sally. She lives with Sally. Or a ring. I’m sure she’s going to come.
NIGEL Molly, that fire is really hot - yourself!
MOLLY OK. My toast is ready. Oh! It’s black.
GLENN It looks horrible - it, Molly. You’ll be sick.
GLENN Tom’s right - in the fire, and salad instead!

**OVER TO YOU** Now go to page 124.
Have got and have; make, do, and get

1 Have got and have

Some examples of phrases with **have got** and **have**:

- I’ve got a good friend in Australia. He’s having a great time there.

2 Here are the positive and negative forms of **have got** and **have**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>POSITIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/you/we/they have got</td>
<td>‘ve got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has got</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/you/we/they have</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>NEGATIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/you/we/they have not/haven’t got</td>
<td>have not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has not/hasn’t got</td>
<td>has not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/you/we/they do not have/don’t have</td>
<td>don’t have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it does not have/doesn’t have</td>
<td>doesn’t have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information on questions with **have got** and **have**, see p. 46.

Note that the word **got** in **have got** never changes: I’ve got; you’ve got; he/she/it’s got etc.

3 We use **have got** for things we own/possess, for family and for illnesses:

- I’ve got a cold / headache / stomach ache etc.
- We haven’t got a garden.

We can use **have** instead of **have got**, but **have got** is more common:

- I have a headache.

4 We use **have** (not **have got**) with these activities:

- have a bath/shower
- have breakfast/lunch/dinner
- have a meal/a pizza/a sandwich/a cup of tea etc.
- have a holiday
- have fun
- have a walk/dance/swim/game

We can use the present continuous of **have** with these activities:

- Dave’s having a bath. Can he phone you later?
- They’re having a game of tennis at the moment.

When you’re saying goodbye to someone, say ‘**Have a good time/holiday/meal/game**’ or just ‘**Have fun**’!

For more information on **make**, **do** and **get**, see p. 72.

**Grammar in action**

1 We use **have got** to talk about our possessions, family and friends:

- She’s got two sisters and five cats.
- John hasn’t got blue eyes. He’s got brown eyes!
- Have you got any money with you?

2 We use **have got** to talk about illnesses:

- He’s got a cold.

3 We use **have** for things we do every day at home (have a bath/shower, have breakfast etc., have a sandwich etc.):

- We normally have tea at 4 o’clock. Where’s Sheila? Is she having a shower?

4 We use **have** for freetime activities (have a holiday, have a good etc., time, have fun, have a walk, etc.):

- She has a dance every time she hears that song.
- We’re having a great time in Corfu. (on a postcard)

**A Possessions, family and friends**

Sally is talking about her sister. Add these words to what she says:

- she’s  got  ‘ve got  ‘s got  got  hasn’t  I’ve  haven’t

I haven’t got any brothers, but got a sister called Kiki. She lives in Canada now; got brown eyes and short black hair. She’s pretty. She got two big black dogs, but she got a husband or kids. I can’t email her, because got a computer, but I talk to her on the phone every day. We haven’t got much money, but we’re both happy. We a good friend in Florida called Mabel, and we spend the summer there in her house.
B Possessions, family, friends and illnesses

Today is Kelly's first day at college in London. She's in the cafeteria. Add positive, negative or question forms of have got to the conversation. Use short forms, and capital letters where necessary.

**KELLY** Excuse me, but **have you got any aspirin?**  
**JULIE** Sure. **(you/a headache?)**  
**KELLY** Yes, it's very noisy here, isn't it? Is this your first day here?  
**JULIE** Yes. My name's Julie. I don't know anyone. **(you/any friends at this college?)**  
**KELLY** I'm Kelly. No, I **(I/not/any friends here), but my brother lives in London, so I'm staying with him. It's good.**  
**JULIE** What about you? Where are you from?  
**KELLY** East Anglia. **(My parents/a farm there), so London will be a big change for me.**  
**JULIE** Yes, I'm sure it will. **(you/any brothers or sisters?)**  
**KELLY** Two sisters, but one is a baby! Shall we get another coffee before our first meeting?

C At home

It's Sunday morning. Jacob is at home with his parents and sisters. He's writing an email to his friend. Add a form of have (having, have, or has) eight times.

```
I'm / a sandwich, because I'm bored. Can I come over? Sunday morning is always the same in my house. Mum always a bath and Dad a walk. Sonia and Diana breakfast together. Then Dad comes home and a shower. Next, Mum and Dad a cup of tea together. Then Dad reads the papers. Then Mum, Dad, Sonia and me lunch together. Diana doesn't lunch with us because she goes to the gym. Anyway, what are you doing at the moment? Are you breakfast? Do you want to go for a swim or something?
```

D Freetime activities

Sara is phoning Maria, who is on holiday in Sweden with her friend Agneta, and Agneta's family. Add the correct form of have and complete the nouns in this conversation. Use capital letters where necessary.

**SARA** Hi, Maria. It's Sara here. **Are you having** a good **time**  
**MARIA** It's great, thanks. **(you) at home?**  
**SARA** No, not really. **(a bad time)** **(my sister) at work at the moment. She doesn't like her new boss.**  
**MARIA** Oh dear. Do you want me to speak to her?  
**SARA** No, it's OK. **(a walk)** **(she) in the park. I'll give her your love. Anyway, how's Agneta?**  
**MARIA** She's fine. **(a game)** **(she) of tennis with her father at the moment.**  
**SARA** And her brother?  
**MARIA** Isak? He's fine too. **(a swim)** **(he) in the lake. Well, I'd better go. I'll speak to you later this week.**
Have got and have; make, do, and get
Make, do, and get

5 Some examples of make, do and get:
I'm making dinner for some friends, and Tom is doing the washing. We're both getting tired.

6 Make sometimes means 'create':
They make great carpets in Turkey.
Our company made a lot of money last year.

We use make with food and drink, and with some nouns (see 'Grammar in action' for a list):
I'm going to make a pizza on Sunday night.
Can you make me a cup of tea, please?
She's making a phone call at the moment.
I think I've made a mistake.

We use do for work in general, and for jobs at home:
Can you be quiet, please? I'm doing some work.
We did three exams last month.
Who's going to do the washing-up?

We also use do for 'personal' jobs:
She's doing her hair right now.
Do your teeth before you go to bed!
And we use do with something, nothing, anything and everything and with well and badly:
I think she's doing something on the computer.
Kate did really well at college.

8 Get can mean 'receive', 'obtain', 'catch' or 'buy':
I get a hundred emails a day. (receive)
Shall I get you a cup from the kitchen? (obtain)
She gets a taxi to work sometimes. (catch)
James got some flowers for his mother. (buy)

or 'become':
Can we go home? I'm getting tired.

Grammar in action

5 We can use make and do for activities in the house:
make food make a cake/a pizza/a cup of tea etc.
make (some) breakfast/lunch/dinner
make a phone call make a noise make a mess

do the dishes/washing-up
do the washing do the cleaning
do the ironing do the cooking
do (your) hair/teeth
do something/nothing etc.

The kids are doing the cooking, but they're making a mess!

6 We can use make and do at school and at work:
make an effort make progress make a mistake
make a decision make a phone call
make money make a (new) product

do some work do a job
do an exercise/test/exam
do (your) homework
do well/badly do business

I think I made some progress yesterday.

7 We use get for 'receive', 'obtain', 'catch' or 'buy', or for 'become' with these words:

get tired get angry get bored
get lost get cold get wet
get better get old get washed
get ready get dressed
get hungry get married
get divorced

We got lost four or five times!

E Making dinner on Saturday night
Paul, who shares a flat with Matt, Martin and Dave, gets a call from Milly. Circle the correct verb forms.

Paul: Hi, Milly. I'm fine, thanks. I'm making/do dinner, because it's Saturday. Here at the flat, I do/make³ the cooking at the weekend, and Matt makes/does² the washing-up. Then Martin makes/does³ breakfast for us all on Sunday morning.
MILLY And what does Dave do?

PAUL Dave? I'm sorry, I can't hear you very well. Matt's doing/making a noise with his new CD player. Dave makes/does the washing - sometimes. Anyway, what are you and Jo doing?

MILLY Jo says she's done/made a cake, but actually, she's made/done a mess in the kitchen. I'm doing/making nothing at the moment. Shall I come round?

F Life in Kyoto

Anne is learning Japanese in Kyoto. If the verbs are correct, put a tick (√). If they're wrong, cross them out and write the correct verb (make, do or get) in the correct form.

Hi Joe,

I hope you're well. I'm making progress in Japanese, but it's not easy. I do a bus to class every morning, and I make two or three exercises with my teacher, but I do mistakes all the time with the kanji (Japanese characters). I'm going to get a dictionary tomorrow, so I can do some work at home. Kyoto is a really amazing place! There are so many temples. Yesterday I made lost four times! Anyway, I got an email from Boris yesterday. He made his final exams at Cambridge last week. He thinks he got well. I hope so, because he made a really big effort! I must go now, Joe. I'm going to do ready for a meal at my teacher's house. Write back soon!

Love, Anne

G A business hotel in Karachi

Alice and Tim are in a hotel in Karachi, waiting for their boss, Clara, and two colleagues, Monty and Alan. Add the correct verb forms.

ALICE That was a really long day! Where's Monty?

TIM He's (making/doing/having) a shower. Monty (gets/s got/makes) a brother here in Karachi, you know. He's called Pandit.

ALICE Really? Perhaps we'll meet Pandit this evening at dinner. I'm (getting/do/ having) hungry. What about you?

TIM Sure. Where's Clara?

ALICE She's (making/doing/getting) her hair, I think. Clara says we're (doing/making/having) well in Karachi. It's a difficult market, but she says we're (doing/making/getting) progress.

TIM Yes, I think so, too. We're meeting a lot of people, anyway. I (get/make/ 've got) ten business cards in my pocket.

ALICE That's good. Look, there's Monty by the stairs. Is Alan coming with us this evening?

TIM I'm not sure. He (gets/has/does) very tired when it's hot like this. He normally (makes/has/s' got) a swim at the end of the day, and then he (gets/has/makes) some phone calls to his children. He's (getting/having/making) divorced, you know.

ALICE Oh dear. That's very sad. I know his wife quite well.

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 125.
Verb + infinitive

Learn to cook; promise to write

1 Look at this example:

verb + infinitive

I want to watch TV.

2 We use an infinitive after these verbs:

agree hope offer remember begin/start
learn plan try decide manage
promise want forget need refuse

I need to speak to the manager.
Sara is trying to learn Chinese this year.
They refused to move their car.

Grammar in action

1 We use decide, hope, need, plan and want to talk about our hopes and plans. Here, we’re talking about the New Year:

I’ve decided to get a new car.
We’re hoping to move to Spain in July.

A Talking about our hopes and plans

Lucy and Adam are with their friends Ravi and Mina on New Year’s Eve (31 December). Add the correct phrases to their conversation.

planning to do decided to change want to spend
hoping to open needs to write

MINA So, what are your plans for the New Year, Adam?

ADAM Well, we want to spend 1 a month in Spain in June. Lucy 2 her final essay for her university degree, and I’m 3 some fishing at sea! What about you two?

MINA Ravi has big plans. He’s 4 his job.

RAVI That’s right. I’m 5 a small bookshop.

LUCY That’s fantastic. But will you make enough money?

planning to create wanted to look
need to find wants to open

RAVI I don’t know! I’m 5 a website at the same time. It’s possible that I’ll sell more books on the internet than in the shop!

MINA He 6 the shop in March.

RAVI I 7 the right place, of course, but there’s an empty shop on Queen Street.

LUCY Great, but what about you, Mina? You 8 for a new house.

MINA I know, but I’ve decided to wait. New houses are so expensive. Later in the year, though, I’m 9 my grandmother in Mumbai. That’ll be exciting.

LUCY Good. Well, it’s almost midnight. I hope it will be a great year for all of us!

Sandra needs to learn Spanish for her job.
Bill’s planning to buy a flat.
I want to have a really good holiday at Easter!
### B Talking about the efforts we make at home and at work

Mia's had a bad week. Look at her blog. Add the infinitives in brackets to each day of her week.

Monday  
I forgot / my purse to college, so didn't have any money all day. I managed / £3 from Nick at lunchtime for a sandwich, but I was pretty hungry by the evening. (to borrow, to take)

Tuesday  
I'm learning at the moment, and I went to my evening class. I tried my partner's hand, but we were dancing too fast and we both fell over! Maggie took a photo on her phone. (to hold, to dance)

Wednesday  
I started some spaghetti at home for my sister, but then the phone rang and it was Claire from New York, and I forgot the spaghetti, and it burnt. Oh dear! I made a real mess. (to cook, to watch)

Thursday  
I remembered Susie and Maisie in town for coffee, but I didn't know the name of the café, so I spent twenty minutes looking for them. I managed Maisie in the end, though. (to text, to meet)

Friday  
I tried an important essay for college on Friday morning, but my neighbour, Ross, is learning the drums and it was impossible to work, so I took a photo of him instead, and then I went to the college library. (to finish, to play)

### C Talking about the things we do for other people

Why did Sophie go to Paris? Read this conversation, and add the following infinitives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to say</th>
<th>to drive</th>
<th>to meet</th>
<th>to help</th>
<th>to marry</th>
<th>to answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

CHARLOTTE  
Sophie rang me on Thursday, and I agreed ........to meet........ 0 her at Heathrow at 11.30.

OLIVIA  
What did she say?

CHARLOTTE  
Nothing. I offered ...................... 1 her all the way to her house in Cambridge, but she didn't tell me anything about her trip.

OLIVIA  
Do you know where she went?

CHARLOTTE  
No. She refused ...................... 2 my questions.

OLIVIA  
So she agreed ...................... 3 Bill in October, and then she went to Paris the same day, and now she's back in England. Charlotte, do you promise ...................... 4 nothing to Sophie?

CHARLOTTE  
OK, I promise.

OLIVIA  
When Sophie was ill, I offered ...................... 5 her at her house. When I was in the kitchen, the phone rang and a girl with a French accent said, 'Hello, this is Anne, Sophie's daughter.'

CHARLOTTE  
Oh! She was probably in France to tell Anne about Bill then!
Verb + infinitive
It’s easy to learn; I’m happy to help

3 Look at this short dialogue:
   It’s nice to see you, Paolo. ~ Thanks. I’m pleased to be here again, Sue.

4 We use it + adjective + infinitive with these common adjectives:
   nice, good, interesting, crazy, silly, wrong, easy, difficult, hard, impossible
   It’s silly to spend all day in one museum.
   It’s impossible to find cheap clothes here.

We can also use it was or it will + it’ll:
   It was good to read your letter.
   It’ll be difficult to go home at the end of this holiday!

5 We use I/you etc. + be + adjective + infinitive with these adjectives:
   glad, happy, pleased, afraid, sad, surprised

D Giving opinions about a new job

Brendan has just started a new job. Kevin, his manager, gives him all the pieces of advice below on his first day. Add it’s and to to the phrases below, and then match your phrases with these endings:

- crazy/go to...
- interesting/visit other...
- hard/say that you’ve...
- wrong/send an email if...
- easy/use the photocopier, and...
- impossible/finish...
- good/talk to...

0 It’s good to talk to your colleagues - they often know more than you.
1 ........................................ all your work before you go home.
2 ........................................ it’s easy to break it, too.
3 ........................................ made a mistake, but you often do make mistakes!
4 ........................................ offices and see how they do things there.
5 ........................................ Tokyo for a meeting - have a video conference instead!
6 ........................................ you can talk to a colleague instead.

E Describing our feelings when we see our friends

Oliver and Emma are meeting their South American friend Miranda at the airport. Complete the words in the spaces using I/You etc. + adjective + infinitive. Use short forms where possible. Explanation 5 above will help you.

EMMA Hi, Miranda. I’m so glad to see you again! How was your flight?
MIRANDA Fine, thanks. I’ve been busy in England again. How are you?
EMMA I'm well, thanks. Let me introduce you to Oliver, my new husband.
OLIVER Hello, Miranda. ................. very pl ................................ m................. 2 you. Emma has told me so much about you! Can I take your suitcase? It looks very heavy.
MIRANDA Thanks, Oliver. Well, it's a beautiful day here in London, isn't it? Look at that blue sky! ................. su ...................... s................. 3 the sun in England in November.
OLIVER It doesn't rain all the time here! Shall we all get a coffee?
EMMA Yes. The café is this way. Miranda, w .......... w .......... sa .......... ................. h .......... 4 that Carlos is ill.
MIRANDA Yes. It's not serious, and he really wanted to come, but h ................. w .......... a .......... 5 travel. It's not nice to be in a plane if you're ill.
EMMA That's right. Anyway, we .......... g .......... wel .......... 6 you to London, and, in half an hour, to our house!

F Looking for a new job

We use a verb + infinitive to talk about our hopes and plans; the efforts we make; the things we do for other people; to give opinions; and to describe our feelings.

Look at these emails between Ella and her French friend, Vincent. First, add words or phrases to Ella's message.

Hi Vincent
How's life? I ............... forgot to ............... 0 send you a Christmas card, so now I'm writing to you instead. I was ............... 1 in your last message that you've ............... 2 to finish your course at college. I'm glad. You need a degree if you ............... 3 to find a good job. I'm looking for a new job myself at the moment. I had an interview for a job on my local newspaper last week. I answered all the questions, and I ............... 4 start work immediately, but unfortunately, I didn't get the job. It's ............... 5 get a job on a newspaper, because a lot of young British people are ............... 6 to find work in the media these days. Anyway, I hope you're OK. I ............... 7 you later this year! What about Easter? Bye for now!
Ella

Now put these words in the right order, and add them to Vincent's reply:

to/afraid/I'm/buy/get/was/it/nice/to/hear/to/hope/I
give/My/parents/to/have/ refused/I/hear/to/surprised/was

Hi Ella!
It was nice to get ............... 0 your message this morning. I hope you're well. ............... 8 that you didn't get the newspaper job - you would be a very good journalist. Yes, life at college is very hard. Sometimes .......... 9 a new shirt or jumper, because I won't have enough money at the end of the month to pay for my flat. .......... 10 me any more money, so I'm doing some weekend work as a waiter. Anyway, I'm OK really, and it would be good to see you at Easter .......... 11 from you again soon. Bye for now!
Vincent

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 125.
20 Articles and nouns
A, an or the

1 a or an
We use a before words that begin with a consonant (b, c, d, f, g, etc.):
  a fast car  a meeting  a good friend
and before u, when u sounds like ‘you’:
  a university  (but an uncle)
and before eu:
  a European city

We use an before words that begin with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u):
  an old house  an ice cream  an apple
and before words that begin with a silent h:
  an hour  (but a holiday)

2 a/an or the
Look at this example:
  I've bought you a cake and a DVD. ~ Lovely!
  Can you put the cake in the fridge, please?

When we talk about something for the first time, we often use a/an (‘a cake’), but when we know which one it is, we use the (‘the cake’). We say the fridge in this example, because we already know which one - there's only one in the room!

If we say to someone ‘I'm going to the supermarket’, we mean ‘the supermarket that we both know – our normal supermarket’. We also say ‘the Taj Mahal’, ‘the Thames’, ‘the sun’, etc. because we know which one they are.

Grammar in action

1 We use a/an to describe people, places and things. Here, we're talking about a friend:
  My friend George is a teacher.
  He's got a black beard, and he lives in a small flat with a roof garden in Cambridge.

2 We use a/an to talk about numbers, prices and how often something happens. We might talk about a beach barbecue on holiday:
  There's a barbecue twice a week here. Normally, there are a hundred people, and you can buy beer or lemonade for a pound a litre. It's great!

3 We use the to talk about things we know about already, and a/an to talk about ‘new’ things. Here, we're talking about our house:
  Let's buy something for the house! The kitchen and the bathroom are OK, but the living room is boring! Shall we buy a painting or a new sofa?

A Describing people, places and things

Laurent is writing about his home town, Saint-Paul-lès-Dax, in south-west France. Write a or an in the gaps.

Saint-Paul-lès-Dax is .................. 0 nice, small French town. We don't have .................. 1 airport or .................. 2 university, but we do have the normal things like .................. 3 internet café and .................. 4 cinema and .................. 5 hairdresser's. If you are visiting south-west France, and you want to see a typical small town, come to Saint-Paul-lès-Dax for .................. 6 afternoon or even .................. 7 hour! And if you want to know more about this part of France, there's .................. 8 useful website, http://www.dax-tourisme.com. But remember to bring .................. 9 umbrella - it rains a lot here!

Tip
We use the when we talk about musical instruments:
  Can you play the piano or the guitar?
B  Talking about numbers, prices and how often things happen

Anne and Sue are on a camping holiday in Germany. After the example, add a/an fourteen more times.

**UWE** Welcome to our campsite! For small tents like yours, it's only twelve euros /night.

**ANNE** Great! It's big site, isn't it? How many people are there?

**GREG** Well, there are hundred and eighty tents, so we have around six hundred people, I suppose. There's small supermarket, and someone comes once day to sell fresh fish.

**SUE** That's nice. Can we wash our clothes here?

**GREG** Sure. There's washing machine in every shower house. It costs euro hour to use.

**ANNE** Is that farm next to the campsite?

**GREG** That's right. You can buy apples there for two euros kilo. We've got little cinema as well. There's film three times week. Are you both students?

**SUE** I'm student, but Anne is actor.

**GREG** Really? Well, I'll show you where to put your tent. Come on!

C  New things, and things we know about already

Rhys has arrived home from college. His flatmate, Lisa, is in the kitchen. If you think the underlined words are correct, put a tick. If you think they're wrong, cross them out and write the correct word.

**LISA** Rhys! I didn't hear you at the door. How's it going? Do you want a cup of tea?

**RHYS** Yes, please. I've just been to the bank, actually, for some advice on my account.

**LISA** I hope things are OK. By the way, there's a letter for you in the living room.

**RHYS** Really? Thanks. What have you done today?

**LISA** I went for the walk in the park. It's the first time I've been at lunch time. I met Joe.

**RHYS** Joe? The guy who plays piano so well?

**LISA** That's right. We had an interesting conversation about music.

**RHYS** That's nice. (Rhys goes to the living room.) Where's a letter? I can't find it.

**LISA** On a television.

**RHYS** (A moment later) I don't believe it! I think I've won a prize!

**LISA** (Entering the living room) How? Did you enter a competition?

**RHYS** Yes, and I've won a tour of China!

**LISA** Fantastic! When does a tour start?

**RHYS** In two months. The letter says I'll see Great Wall of China on my second day and then the Forbidden City in Beijing!
Articles and nouns
Plural nouns (trees; people)

3 Look at the plural nouns in this dialogue:
   *What's on your shopping list? ~ A few things for my dinner party tomorrow: some flowers, four wine glasses, two new knives, some fish and some tomatoes.*

4 We usually make plural nouns by adding -s:
   - one ball → two balls
   - one metre → three metres
   - a car → some cars
   - a question → any questions?

5 With nouns that end in -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, and -x, we add -es:
   - bus → buses
   - glass → glasses
   - dish → dishes
   - beach → beaches
   - box → boxes

6 With nouns that end in a consonant (b, c, d, f etc.) + -y, we change the -y to -ies:
   - baby → babies
   - family → families
   - city → cities
   - country → countries
   - story → stories

   but we don’t change the y after a vowel (a, e, i, o, u):
   - days
   - journeys

   The plural form of penny is pennies, but we normally use pence or p:
   *That’s ten pence, please. Can you lend me 50p?*
   *Or, if we’re talking about pounds and pence, nothing:*
   *That’s six pounds seventy.*

7 With nouns that end in -f or -fe, we change the -f/-fe to -ves:
   - leaf → leaves
   - loaf → loaves
   - wife → wives
   - knife → knives

8 Most nouns that end in -o have -s: kilos, photos, radios, etc. But three common nouns have -es:
   - potato → potatoes
   - tomato → tomatoes
   - hero → heroes

9 Some nouns have irregular plural forms:
   - man → men
   - woman → women
   - child → children
   - person → people
   - foot → feet
   - tooth → teeth
   - fish → fish
   - sheep → sheep
   - mouse → mice

10 Some nouns only have plural forms:
   - clothes
   - trousers
   - jeans
   - pyjamas
   - glasses
   - scissors

   Team and family can be singular or plural:
   *My team is/are winning. My family come/comes from Scotland.*

Grammar in action

4 We can use plural nouns when we tell someone about the actions we have completed. This might be at work:
   *Have you had a busy morning? ~ Yes - four visitors, two meetings, fifteen emails and six phone calls!*

5 We can use plural nouns when we talk about the things that we want to buy, or that we own. We might talk about a shopping trip:
   *I need some new clothes. ~ What do you need? ~ Trousers for work, a pair of jeans and some new pyjamas. ~ I’ll come with you. I need to get three loaves of bread from the baker’s and some tomatoes.*

6 We can use plural nouns to describe the number of people or things we can see. This example is a radio ad:
   *There are about five thousand people here. Men, women and children are enjoying the sunshine and the music. Come to the Hyde Park Festival!*
D A short advertisement

Cross out the noun plurals that are wrong in this radio advertisement for a large store, and rewrite them.

0 men 2 4 6
1 3 5

Come to ‘Lacey’s’! We’ve got clothes for mans and womans. We’ve got toys for children. We’ve got sofas for families! Persons come from all the citys in UK to ‘Lacey’s’. Are your foots uncomfortable? Have a look at our shoes. Are you always late for work? Have a look at our watches. At ‘Lacey’s’ we make people’s lifes better!

E Shopping

Josie and Juan are at Borough Market in London. Add plural forms of these words to their conversation:

sandwich potato pound piece tomato penny fish loaf person

JUAN Is this the market, then? There are so many people here!

JOSIE It’s very popular. Shall we get some bread first? Excuse me, could we have two small brown，请请 please?

MAN Certainly, Madam. That’s three_/sixty, please. (Josie gives him four pounds.) Thank you, and here’s forty_/change for you. Don’t spend it all today!

JUAN I’m really hungry, Josie. Is that woman selling fish? Why?

JOSIE Yes. I’m hungry too. Can you get me a chicken sandwich? (Josie goes to the fishmonger’s.) I’ll buy some fishmonger for tonight.

WOMAN Morning, love. I’ve got some nice haddock today.

JOSIE All right. Could I have two small pieces of haddock, please?

JUAN Here’s your sandwich, Josie. Shall I get some chips with the fish tonight.

JOSIE Good idea. There’s a greengrocer’s over there. Could you get some tomatoes at the same time? We could have a tomato salad.

WOMAN That’s three pounds for the fish please, darling.

JOSIE Here you are. Thanks very much.

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 125.
21 There is, there are; this, that, these, and those
There is, there are

1 Look at these examples:
   There's a cash machine at the supermarket.
   There aren't many people here.
   Are there any Brazilian students in your class?

2 There is/are: if the noun after there is singular or uncountable, we use the singular form of be:
   There's a good film at the cinema.
   There isn't any sugar left, I'm afraid.

   If the noun is plural, we usually use the plural form of be:
   There are two pizzas in the fridge.
   There aren't any shops open now.

3 To make questions, we put be before there:
   Is there a supermarket near here?

   and we use was/were after there to talk about the past:
   There weren't any tickets left.

4 We often use these words after there + be:
   a/any some much/many/a lot of lots of two/three/hundreds etc.

   There's a cat under the car.
   There wasn't any science homework last week.
   There were three hundred people at their wedding.

   We sometimes use there + be with a problem:
   There's a problem at work. I may be late home.

Grammar in action

1 We use there + be to talk about where things or people are. We might talk about our town:
   There are a lot of police in the town centre today.
   There's a new cinema outside town.
   Is there a car park near the High Street?

2 We use there + be to talk about when things happen. Here, we're making plans:
   There's a good play at the theatre next week. Or there are one or two new films at the cinema. ~ OK. And is there a market on Sunday?

3 We use there + be to talk about numbers. We might talk about parties:
   There were a lot of guests at the party, but there weren't any famous people.
   There are two parties tonight.
   Which one shall we go to?

4 We often use there + be to talk about which items we have at home. Here, we're talking about food and drink:
   Is there any butter left?
   There are some biscuits in the cupboard.

   And we use there + be to talk about the types of food that are in a meal:
   Don't worry. There isn't any meat in the pasta.
   Is there any sugar in the coffee?

A Where things are and when things happen

Fabio is talking to Fukiko in the kitchen of his university hall of residence. Put the words in brackets in the correct order, and add them to the conversation.

FABIO How long have you been here?
FUKIKO All summer.
FABIO Great, can I ask you some questions? For example, are there any buses (buses/any/there/are) that go into town?
FUKIKO Yes, (bus stop/another/there's) outside the hall. The journey into the town centre only takes ten minutes. And if you want to go to a concert or something in Bristol, (bus/another/there's) from the centre, or you can take a train.
FABIO That's fine, but (a/there/is/supermarket) on campus?
FUKIKO No, (a/was/shop/there) here in the summer but it's closed now. But (good super markets/there/four or five/are) in town.
FABIO OK, my last question – (a/there/laundrette/is)?
HOLLY  Well, there's a room with washing machines, but you don't pay - you just take some washing powder with you. So, are you ready for your first classes?
FABIO  I think so - (is/anything/there) tomorrow?
HOLLY  Another question! Well, (isn't/there/anything) in the morning, but (two/are/lectures/there) in the afternoon.

B  Talking about numbers

It's nearly Christmas. Holly is sending an email to her friend Glenn. Put 'l' in the four places where the word there is missing.

Hi Glenn,
How are you? Are you looking forward to Christmas? I know that / are lots of things to do, but it's fun, isn't it? We had our Christmas lunch at work today, and were thirty-five of us in a very small Italian restaurant! Then I went shopping, but I didn't buy many presents, because there were thousands of people on Oxford Street. Anyway, are only six days left until Christmas now. The kids will be excited this weekend. Perhaps I'll take them to the cinema - are one or two new Christmas films at the moment.
Do you want to bring your two boys if we go to something? Let me know. Bye for now!

C  Talking about food and drink

Sam and Tom return to Tom's flat after an evening football match. Add the following phrases to their conversation. You will need to use two phrases more than once. Use capital letters where necessary.

Is there anything to eat?
TOM  No, nothing, I'm afraid.
SAM  Are you sure? always something!
TOM  two pizzas in the freezer, but I ate them at the weekend.
SAM  (Looking in the fridge) Well, any eggs, so we can't make an omelette.
TOM  Wait a moment! some tomatoes in the fridge and there's one onion in the cupboard.
SAM  OK. any pasta?
TOM  Yes, a lot of pasta, actually.
SAM  Well, that's fine. any chillies or garlic or anything like that?
TOM  two green chillies at the bottom of the cupboard, and we've got some herbs, but any garlic, I'm afraid.
SAM  Don't worry. I think we've got enough.
TOM  OK, but what are you cooking?
SAM  It's an Italian sauce called 'arrabiata'. It's delicious.
There is, there are; this, that, these, and those
This, that, these, and those

5 This is my father and that’s my grandmother.

6 Here are forms of this, that, these, those:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>this chair</td>
<td>these chairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that chair</td>
<td>those chairs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use this, that, these, those with nouns:

This shop is nice, but these jeans are expensive!

We also use them without nouns, when the meaning is clear, and with one/ones:

Those are my books. (Those = the books)
Look at these watches. That one at the back is cheap.
(That one = that watch)

Grammar in action

5 We use this/these (sometimes with here) for things that are near to us, and that/those (sometimes with there) for things that are not so near. To say where things are in a shop, we can say:

These blue flowers here smell quite nice, but those pink flowers in the window look fantastic!

6 We use this and these to talk about our present and future activities. We might talk about our plans:

What are we going to do this evening? ~ Can we stay in? I’m enjoying this film.

And we use that and those to talk about the past.

Here, we’re talking about a class that’s just finished:

That was a really difficult class! Did you understand anything? Those written exercises were horrible!

7 We use this and that when we speak on the phone:

Hello, this is Dave here. ~ Dave, is that your mum on the phone? Can I speak to her later?

And we use this and that to talk about friends and family when we meet people:

Steve, this is my husband, Mike. That’s our daughter, Sally, over there.

We use that’s right to say that a piece of information is correct:

You work at the university, don’t you? ~ Yes, that’s right.

D A food shop

Marcus is buying some food on his way home. Complete what he says using this, that, those or these.

‘Hello. Can I have _______ tin of biscuits, please? Oh, and could I have some of _______ eggs, too? And perhaps I could have some of _______ French cheese? I’d also like two of _______ packets of your coffee, and _______ small jar of strawberry jam. Oh and two of _______ chicken legs, and how much is _______ wonderful chocolate cake over there?’
E A holiday apartment in Italy

Sam, who works for Sun Holidays, is showing the Robertson family (Lucy, David and their children Lily and Jack) their holiday apartment in Italy. Add this, that, those or these to their conversation.

SAM So, this is your apartment. It’s nice, isn’t it? That’s the swimming pool over there.

LILY Why are children in our pool, then?

SAM Well, you share the pool with apartment behind trees, Lily. Now, is your front door are the keys, Mrs Robertson. But don’t worry if you lose them. Just come and see me at the office.

DAVID Is the town over there, Sam?

SAM Yes. Can you see shops? There’s a good supermarket there, and a baker’s.

JACK Look, Lily! ’s the sea over there. Can you see boats?

SAM OK. I think that’s everything. Have a great holiday!

(Later, inside the apartment)

LUCY is a nice apartment, isn’t it, kids? What are we going to do afternoon?

LILY I want to go to the beach!

LUCY OK, Lucy. But put some of this sun cream on your face and arms, first. Do you remember time when you got burnt in Spain?

DAVID After the beach, we could have a meal in one of restaurants that we saw morning.

JACK I want some fish and chips!

LUCY You can have fish and chips evening, but you have to try some local Italian food week too, Jack!

F A phone call from school

Martin is meeting his wife Sophie at work. Add there, this or that to their conversation.

SOPHIE Hi, Martin. I’m almost ready. This is my colleague, Brian. Brian, is my husband, Martin.

BRIAN Pleased to meet you, Martin. ’s some coffee in the machine.

MARTIN Thanks. (Martin’s mobile phone rings.) Excuse me. Hello, is Martin here. Yes, ’s right. I’m Ella’s dad. Is a problem at school?

SOPHIE Is Ella’s school on the phone, Martin?

MARTIN Yes. Ella went to the painting club, but she’s not feeling very well. But don’t worry. ’s a nurse at the school. Do you want to speak to Ella? (Martin gives the phone to Sophie.)

SOPHIE Ella? is Mummy. Are you OK, darling?

BRIAN It’s natural to worry when the school rings, but normally it’s nothing.

MARTIN ’s right. Ella’s got a stomach ache, that’s all. was a birthday party at school, and Ella ate too much ice cream.

SOPHIE Well, it’s not serious, but we’d better go, Martin.

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 125.
1 Nouns with plural forms are **countable nouns** - because we can count them:
   a/one car  two cars  three cars

   We can use a/an, some and the with countable nouns

   **SINGULAR**  **PLURAL**
   a:      a cat  -
   some:  -  some cats
   the:   the cat  the cats

2 Some nouns - **uncountable nouns** - normally have no plural forms:
   moneys  homeworks  furniture

   Other common uncountable nouns are:

   information  news  advice  travel  petrol  traffic  food  bread  rice  pasta  milk  cheese  cake  meat  weather  snow  rain  ice  thunder  lightning

   We do not use a, or one, two, three before uncountable nouns:
   We need to buy a bread.
   Would you like some toast?
   Look at the rain! We're going to get wet!

3 With some **uncountable nouns**, we can use a **piece of** or other words in front of them:

   a piece of + information, luggage, news, advice, homework, furniture, chicken, cheese, toast
   a slice of + bread, beef, pork, lamb
   a glass/bottle of + water, milk
   a spoonful of + coffee, sugar  a cup of + coffee, tea
   a packet of + tea, coffee, rice, pasta, sugar

4 We normally use some before **uncountable nouns** and plural **countable nouns** (e.g. books, bikes, cities) in positive sentences:

   I've got some exciting news!
   I got some books from the library yesterday.

5 We can also use some in **questions**, when we're making offers and requests:
   Would you like some tea?

6 We normally use any before **uncountable** and plural **countable nouns** in negative sentences and questions:
   There aren't any yoghurts in the fridge.
   Did your dad give you any advice?

   **We sometimes use no instead of not any:**
   There are no hotels in this part of town. We have no fish left, I'm afraid.

**Grammar in action**

1 We use **a, some and any** with nouns to talk or ask about the amount of something. We might talk about food:
   Have you got any tomatoes or meat? I could make a pasta dish. ~ Good idea, I've got an onion and some cheese we could use too

2 We use a/an and some with nouns when we make requests. We might be in a restaurant:
   We'd like some water, please, and some bread. I'd also like a glass of cola, please. ~ Of course, and I'll bring some menus for you.

3 We use some with nouns when we offer something in particular. Here, we're talking to some guests at home:
   Would you like some sandwiches or some cake? ~ No, thanks, we're not hungry.

**A corner shop**

David works in his family's corner shop. Here are some of the things people ask for during the day. Choose the right words.

0 Can I have a ... **bottle** *(slice/bottle/packet)* of milk, please?
1 Have you got a small ... *(spoonful/glass/piece)* of chicken, please?
2 Could I have a ... *(packet/piece/bottle)* of brown rice?
3 I'd like a ... *(piece/cup/packet)* of white coffee with two ... *(slices/spoonfuls/bottles)* of sugar, please.
4 Can I have four ... *(slices/glasses/packets)* of beef?
B Will's Weather and Travel Website

It's 8 a.m. Look at Will's Weather and Travel Website. There's one wrong plural form in each part of the country. Cross out the wrong forms and write the correct words at the end.

Will's Weather and Travel Website

NORTH OF SCOTLAND: I haven't got much informations for travellers in this part of Britain. It's going to be windy, if you're on the top of a mountain, but for most people it's a nice but cool day. information

SOUTH OF SCOTLAND: There will be some very heavy rain here today. There isn't much traffics right now between Glasgow and Edinburgh, but there are two football matches tonight in Glasgow.

NORTH OF ENGLAND: Take your umbrellas if you're going out today in Manchester, Liverpool and Preston. There aren't many clouds in the sky at the moment, but it there will be rains later today.

WALES: Three cars have crashed outside Cardiff. The Police haven't given us much advices, but it's a good idea to listen to Radio Cardiff this morning, if you're driving in south Wales.

NORTHERN IRELAND: There will be some ices on the road in the early morning in Northern Ireland, but there will be blue skies for most of the day. Drive to work carefully!

EAST ANGLIA: Some petrol stations will be closed today in East Anglia, so if you didn't buy petrois yesterday, don't drive too far!

SOUTH OF ENGLAND: There are problems on the underground in London. If you're travelling to Heathrow with a lot of luggages, remember that you can check in your suitcases at Paddington station.

C In a café in the park

Marsha is ordering food for David and their kids, Zoe and baby Ryan. Circle the correct options to complete the conversation.

MARSHA This is a nice café for a few families, David. I'll order a/some food. You can sit down with the kids.

DAVID Let's find a/some table, kids. Can you see some/any other men here? I think I'm the only one!

WOMAN Hi! Can I help you?

MARSHA Sure. You can look after a/the children for the next ten years if you like! I'll ask my husband, David! What would you like? Some/A sandwich?

DAVID No, I've had too much breads/bread of toast. Have they got any/a rice?

ZOE I'd like some toasts/toast, Daddy! I don't want a/- rice!

DAVID How many pieces/piece of toast would you like, Zoe?

MARSHA Two coffee/coffees please, some fried rice and a/some toast, please.

ZOE I've got one/some homeworks/homework to do, Daddy. Can you help me? First, where do a/- tomatoes come from? And second, is it cold in Canada?

DAVID Yes, it is. There's a lot of snow/snows there in winter, Zoe.

MARSHA Here's the food! David, a/the bread looks lovely. Do you want to try my sandwich?
Countable and uncountable nouns

Much, many, and a lot of

7 Look at these examples:
We don't have much pasta left.
There aren't many students in class today.
I've got a lot of problems at the moment.

8 Much, many and a lot of mean a large quantity of. If you say She's got a lot of money, you mean 'she's rich.'

9 We use many with plural countable nouns and much with uncountable nouns:
I haven't seen many tourists in London this year.
How much information do you need?

→ For more information on countable/uncountable nouns, see p. 86.

10 We can use a lot of with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns:
He's taking a lot of exams at the moment.
I listen to a lot of music at the weekend.
Toby doesn't play a lot of golf these days.

Exams are countable; music and golf are uncountable.

Grammar in action

4 We can use a lot of in positive sentences, negative sentences and questions. Here we're talking about a day out in London:

London has a lot of museums.
We didn't spend a lot of money at Harrod's because it was so busy.
Did you buy a lot of gifts?

5 We normally only use many or much + a noun in negative sentences and questions. (In positive sentences, we prefer to use a lot of: I've got much a lot of work to do.) Here, we're talking about food and free time activities:

How many onions and how much bread have you got?
Are there many golf courses in that part of Spain? ~ Yes, but I was busy, so I didn't play much golf in the end.

6 But we sometimes use many in positive sentences when we write. We might write about the UK:
The UK has many small fishing ports.

And we can also use much and many in positive sentences after so and too. Here, we're talking about school:

Our teacher was great. He gave us so much advice.
I can't come tonight. I've got too much homework to do.

D Talking about school days

Read this article about a small school in Scotland. Add much or many to the spaces. A 'pupil' is a child at school.

When I was a child there were many small schools in villages in Scotland. There were only fifteen pupils in my school, for example, and one children lived nine or ten miles miles from our village. Our teacher didn't give us homework in the summer, because we had to work on our parents' farms. And sometimes in the winter there was too much snow, and we couldn't come to school. My teacher was called Mrs McCraig. She read so many books and newspapers, and she gave us so much information about America and China and Africa! I met her six years after school, and she still remembered me.
E Talking about food and free time activities

Mike and his neighbour Debbie are in Mike's garden. They're going to have a dinner party. Add the correct words or phrases.

MIKE Here's your orange juice. It's not very cold. There wasn't ________ 0 (much/many) ice, I'm afraid.

DEBBIE It's lovely here. Shall we eat outside when our guests come? I could bring some garden chairs.

MIKE It's a nice idea, but how ___________ 1 (much/many) garden chairs have you got, Debbie?

DEBBIE I'll have a look in my shed. I bought ___________ 2 (a lot of/much of) them last summer for a wedding. What about a barbecue?

MIKE But we're going to have a Spanish omelette! You can't cook an omelette on a barbecue.

DEBBIE I've got ___________ 3 (much/a lot of) fish, and it's ready to eat. We can have fish instead, with some salad.

MIKE I haven't got ___________ 4 (much/many) salad.

DEBBIE I'm sure we'll be OK. How ___________ 5 (many/much) lettuce have you got, and how ___________ 6 (many/much) tomatoes?

MIKE I'll have a look, but I think it's going to rain. There are ___________ 7 (much/a lot of) clouds in the sky.

F Buying food in a delicatessen

Megan is in a delicatessen (a shop where you can buy good quality cheese, bread, meat, etc.) Add the correct words from the brackets.

MEGAN Hello! I'd like to buy ________ 0 (some/any) of the cold beef, please. It looks nice. How much is it?

MAN It's £4.50 for ________ 1 (some/a) kilo. The cooked prawns are good, too. I don't normally have ________ 2 (a lot of/much) prawns, but they're cheap at the moment.

MEGAN I'll have ________ 3 (some/any) beef, please. Six slices will be fine. Have you got ________ 4 (any/many) fresh pasta today?

MAN Oh dear. We haven't got ________ 5 (no/much) pasta today, I'm afraid. I've got ________ 6 (some/any) delicious cheese from Wales, though, and ________ 7 (some/a) brown bread from a local farm.

MEGAN The bread looks nice, too. I'd like to buy ________ 8 (any/some). Can I have ________ 9 (a/some) loaf, please? And can I try ________ 10 (much/some) cheese?

MAN Of course you can. Is there anything else? I haven't got ________ 11 (many/much) eggs today, I'm afraid - there are only two left.

MEGAN Don't worry. The cheese is fantastic. I'm sure you sell ________ 12 (a lot of/any) of it. Could you give me half a kilo, please?

MAN Certainly. I'll give you ________ 13 (a/any) bag to carry everything. Can I give you ________ 14 (an/some) advice too? Make sure the cheese is warm when you eat it. It tastes much better!

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 125.
Pronouns and possessives
Subject and object pronouns (I, me)

1 Look at this:

subject + verb + object

Did Sam phone Anne?
No, he met her in town.

The second time we talk about Sam, we use he; the second time we talk about Anne, we use her.

2 Here are the subject and object pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usually, it's wrong to leave out these pronouns:

No, I don't like it. (NOT No, I don't like.)
We are leaving today. (NOT Are leaving today.)

3 We can use object pronouns after these verbs + prepositions:

agree with  belong to  laugh at  listen to
look at  play with  reply to  smile at  stay with
speak to  talk to  wait for  write to

That bike belongs to me.
I smiled at them, but they didn't speak to me.
My grandmother stays with us every summer.

Grammar in action

1 We use subject and object pronouns in daily conversation when it is clear which person or thing we are talking about. We might talk about our family:

I saw Mark yesterday. I drove him home after work.

We talked about Mum. He agrees with me. We need to visit her more often.

2 We use it to talk about things and animals. Here, we're talking about a visit to the zoo:

I went to London Zoo yesterday.
It's in Regent's Park. I saw a baby elephant. It was so sweet.

3 We use it to talk about the weather, time, days, dates, and distances. Here, it's breakfast time:

Good morning! It's Monday, and it's the sixth of March. You're listening to Radio Bristol.
It's nine o'clock. Get up! It's a lovely day.
How far is it to your new college? ~ Don't worry. It's only a couple of miles. I'll go by bike after breakfast.

4 We use you when we talk to groups of people in lectures and presentations, and at weddings or birthday parties:

Can you hear me at the back? You're all welcome to visit me in my new house!

5 We use you to talk generally about people. Here, we're talking about food and drink:

You need a teapot for a good cup of tea!
On a cold day, you need a good, hot breakfast!

Daily conversation

Marco is staying with the Petts family (Geoff, Linda and their children, Lewis and Kylie) in Warwick. It's Saturday morning. Cross out the underlined words and put a single subject or object pronoun in their place.

LINDA Hi Marco. Geoff didn't bring me a cup of tea this morning. Have you seen Geoff, him or Kylie?

MARCO Yes, Geoff, 1's playing with Kylie, 2 in the garden.

LINDA Thanks. I'll call Geoff and Kylie, 3 for breakfast. It's a lovely day. Have you got any plans?

MARCO Yes. I'm playing football in the park with Lewis. I'm waiting for Lewis, 4 at the moment.

LINDA Good luck! Lewis likes his bed. (Marco goes upstairs, and then Geoff brings Kylie into the kitchen.) Hi Geoff! How's Kylie today?
GEOFF Kylie's fine, Linda. Kylie and I played on the lawn, and Kylie wanted to have a look in the shed. Then I put Kylie in the wheelbarrow. Where are the boys?

LINDA Upstairs. Lewis and Marco are going to play football in the park.

GEOFF Well, it’s a nice day. Perhaps we should take Kylie, and we can all watch the game.

B Talking about things, animals, the weather, times, days, dates and distances

Carrie and Jude are listening to the radio in their car. They’re driving to a wedding. Add the correct words from the brackets to their conversation.

RADIO Good morning. (You’re/It’s/They’re) listening to BBC Radio Yorkshire. (It’s/He’s/We’re/It’s) Saturday the tenth of March, and (it’s/it/he’s) going to be a sunny day...

CARRIE Good. Mark and Steff will be happy. How far is (it’s/it/he) to the church now?

JUDE About ten miles, I think. Have you got a present? What did (it/you/us) buy?

CARRIE (It’s/She’s/He’s) a silver teapot. I bought (her/it/him) in Selfridge’s. Do you remember what they bought (it/we/us) for our wedding?

JUDE They gave (me/I/it) a tie, and they gave you a dress.

CARRIE Look, Jude! Slow down! What’s that on the road? Is (he/she/it) a dog?

JUDE I think so. It’s OK. (It/It’s/You) just crossing the road. We’ll wait.

CARRIE OK, but what time is (he/it/it’s)? Are we going to be late?

JUDE No, don’t worry. (It’s/It/He’s) only ten past eleven. We’ve got plenty of time. Relax.

RADIO ...so if you see Benjamin, Lord Stafford’s favourite dog, phone us, and you’ll get a £1,000 reward...

C Talking to groups of people, and talking generally about people

It’s the end of a Saturday course at an art gallery in Edinburgh. The teacher is talking to the class. Put ‘/’ in the ten places where the word you is missing.

Ladies and gentlemen, can I ask / to sit down for a moment, please? I’d like / to talk to for a minute before you go. Thank you. I hope that will agree / with me that we’ve had an interesting day. When look at paintings carefully, you understand more about the people around you, don’t you? And as you relax at home tomorrow, perhaps will think again about some of the beautiful paintings you’ve studied today. After all, paintings tell you stories about yourselves, your friends and your families. I want to ask you, before go, to look at one final painting, one of my favourites. What do think about when see it? Look at this successful man. Look at the flowers. What do see? I won’t give you the answers. I don’t have the answers, anyway. But isn’t it true that when you get older, understand that some things are important, and some things aren’t important? Thank for coming.
23 Pronouns and possessives
Possessives (my, mine)

4 Look at this:
That's my phone. ~ No, it's mine. Yours is blue.

5 Here are the possessive adjectives and pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT PRONOUN</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE PRONOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 We use my, your, etc. (possessive adjectives) with nouns:
my cat, your bag

They do not change with singular or plural nouns:
their books (not theirs books)

and we use mine, your, etc. (possessive pronouns) instead of my cat, her bag, etc.:
I've got my coat. Is this yours? (yours = your coat)
I can't believe this house is finally ours!

Tips
1 Don't use a/an or the with my, mine etc.
This is the your desk - the mine is over there.

2 Say Tom and his girlfriend/his wife/his daughter, not his girlfriend etc.

3 Its is different from it's (= it is): It's half past seven. Have you given the dog its dinner?

Grammar in action

6 We use my, your, etc. to talk about about family members, friends, flatmates, and work colleagues:
My parents are coming to London tomorrow. David is his boss, not his friend.

7 We use my, your, etc. for parts of the body:
Have you brushed your hair?
He's closed his eyes, but he's not asleep.

8 We use my, your, etc. and mine, yours, etc. to talk about things that belong to us. Tom is talking about the room that he shares with his brother:
My brother Mike is at work at the moment, but this room is ours. All those CDs in the corner are mine, but the suits in the wardrobe are his. ~ Is that your CD player? It's nice. ~ No, it belongs to my parents, actually. The TV is theirs too!

9 We use my, your, etc. and mine, yours, etc. to talk about personal facts and information. We might be at work:
This is his office. Shall we knock?
Here's my email address. Can I have yours?
This is Sue's desk, and this is mine.

D Talking about family members, friends etc. and parts of the body

Michiko, Pilar, Yuanjian and Guus are sharing a flat in Sydney. Add my, your etc. to their conversation.

MICHIKO ................. My .......... ⁰ mother is arriving this afternoon, Guus, and my room is in a mess. Where's Pilar? Perhaps she can help me.

GUUS She's brushing ..... ¹ teeth. ....... ² boss has asked her to work today. What time does ..... ³ mother arrive?

MICHIKO 2 p.m. Guus, can you help me? I'll help you when ..... ⁴ parents come next time.

GUUS I'm sorry, I can't help you. I'm washing ..... ⁵ hair this morning.

MICHIKO What? Men don't wash ..... ⁶ hair! I mean, they do, but it only takes five minutes.

GUUS I'm sorry, but Yuanjian and I are meeting ..... ⁷ new girlfriends today. We have to look good.

MICHIKO Yuanjian's got a new girlfriend? What about ..... ⁸ girlfriend in Beijing? Where is he?
GUUS He's cooking some eggs and chips for me.

MICHIKO The most important thing in your life is ____________________ stomach, Guus.
I hope ____________________ new girlfriend knows this.

E Talking about things that belong to us, and about personal facts

Dieter has arrived at Heathrow airport. A customs officer asks him to open his suitcase. Add the words to the conversation. You will need to use some words more than once.

my mine your yours his hers

OFFICER What's ______ name, sir?
DIETER Dieter Mann. Here's ______ passport.
OFFICER Is this suitcase ______?
DIETER Yes, it's ______. It's just a small case for ______ holiday. I'm staying in London for a week.
OFFICER OK. Open ______ suitcase please. (Dieter opens it.)
DIETER Here you are. These are ______ clothes, and these are some books.
OFFICER Is everything ______?
DIETER Well, all the clothes are ______, but I borrowed one or two things from my brother. This dictionary is ______, for example. Oh, and I borrowed something from my sister, too. This computer game is ______. Is it important?
OFFICER No, that's fine. OK, you can close ______ case. Have a good holiday.

F Do the cups belong to us or them?

Emily and Tom are leaving Nora and Brian's flat after five years. Brian is emailing Nora, who is on a business trip to India. After the example, there are five mistakes in the first message, and five in the second. Cross out the wrong words and rewrite them.

Hi Nora,

Tom left this morning but her ______ books are still here! I'll text him tomorrow. I asked Emily for hers key to the flat. But I'm not sure if the blue cups in the kitchen are ours cups or theirs - you forget these things when he live with people for a long time, don't you? By the way, your mum rang this morning. She's going to visit us at the weekend. Is it sunny in Mumbai? I don't know what time he is in India, but I'm going to bed here! Bye!

Hi Brian,

Thanks for your message. Its Monday morning in Mumbai. I've just washed the hair, and I'm looking out of the window. There's a small bird in the hotel garden, and it's singing an Indian song! Anyway, I'm travelling to Delhi later today. It's about two hours by plane. The name of mine hotel in Delhi is 'The Metropolitan'. I hope things are OK now at the flat. Did you text Tom? I think some of those books are my, actually. And the blue cups are our! Your sister gave them to us. And is my mother arriving on Friday or Saturday? Bye for now!

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 125.
24 Possessives (2) 's and s' possessive

1 Look at these examples:
This is Lucy, Isobel's daughter.
Excuse me, but where are the men's clothes?
This is a photo of my grandparents' house.

2 Here are the rules for using the apostrophe ('):
- We use 's with names and singular nouns:
  Have you seen Ben's passport anywhere?
  My boss's office is over there.
- We use 's with irregular plural nouns such as women, men, children and people:
  The women's toilets are next to the door.
- We use s' with regular plural nouns:
  The footballers' coach is coming!

Grammar in action

1 We normally use the apostrophe with people, to say that something belongs to someone:
Those are Phil's CDs. (his CDs)
We use it to talk about other people's things, and their friends and family:
Lily's dress is wonderful, isn't it?
Is that your sister's new boyfriend?
We can also use it with animals:
My dogs' names are Victor and Hugo. (their names)

2 We usually use of (not an apostrophe) with things:
What's the name of the road? (not the road's name)
particularly after words like beginning, end, back, front, top, bottom.

We might talk about a visit to the cinema:
Did you have a good time? ~ Not really. We arrived late; we sat at the back of the cinema, and we didn't see the beginning of the film. (not the cinema's back or the film's beginning)

3 But we sometimes use the apostrophe with places and companies in the news, or in business:
Madrid's new Museum of Modern Art will open in February.
Betty Santo is Coca Cola's new boss in Europe.

4 We can use the apostrophe without a noun, if the meaning is clear:
This is my camera, but where is Jack's?

We do this when we talk about visiting some shops, our dentist and our doctor:
I'm going to the dentist's tomorrow.
Did you get some chicken from the butcher's? ~ Yes, but I forgot to get any tomatoes at the greengrocer's.

When we say the chemist's etc., we mean 'the chemist's shop'.

5 We use the apostrophe to talk about time. Here, a businesswoman is talking to her colleague:
Next month's trip to New York will be interesting.
Did you enjoy yesterday's lunch?

A Talking about other people's things, and their friends and family

Matt, Lucy and their children Thomas and Daisy are having a picnic with their Brazilian friends, Julieta and Rafi, and their boys, Lucas and Sabino. Add two-word phrases with 's or s'.

LUCY Daisy, have you got Daddy's camera (camera/Daddy) in your bag? We could take a nice picture.

RAFI Can you pass me ........................................................................ (shoes/Sabino), Julieta? We'll go for a little walk in a minute.

JULIETA I can't reach them, Rafi, but I think they're under ....................................................................... (coat/Lucas).

LUCY OK, smile everyone! Thomas, don't eat ........................................................................ (sandwich/your sister). It's been on the ground.

MATT What a lovely day for a picnic! Where's the ........................................................................ (football/boys), Rafi? We could have a game.
RAFI: Good idea, but Sabino needs the toilet first. Are there any toilets/men in the park, Matt?

MATT: Yes, they're in the café. See you in a minute!

DAISY: Daddy, I've lost my cup. Can I have a drink from cup/Thomas, please?

MATT: Of course you can. Lucy, can we use the coats/children as goal posts in the football game?

LUCY: Yes, OK. But don't play too close to the food, darling.

B Visiting shops

Henry is leaving a phone message. Add the correct shop names. You don't need to use one of them.

RAFI: Good idea, but Sabino needs the toilet first. Are there any toilets/men in the park, Matt?

MATT: Yes, they're in the café. See you in a minute!

DAISY: Daddy, I've lost my cup. Can I have a drink from cup/Thomas, please?

MATT: Of course you can. Lucy, can we use the coats/children as goal posts in the football game?

LUCY: Yes, OK. But don't play too close to the food, darling.

C Talking about news, politics, business and time

This is the homepage of a news website, showing the main 'stories' of the day. Add 's five more times after the example.

• Turkey/Prime Minister arrives in Uganda at the beginning of the Africa Trade Talks
• After today meeting, Shell Chief Executive refuses to answer questions from journalists
• Film star says that the Government idea for a new airport is wrong
• A small plane lands on the top of a mountain in Peru to help three Australian tourists
• No tickets left for next month concerts by the Philadelphia Orchestra at New York Carnegie Hall
**Possessives (2)**

**Some friends of mine**

3 Look at this:

What are you doing this weekend? ~ Well, some **friends of mine** are going camping and they've invited me.

Some **friends of mine** means 'some of my friends'.

4 We form these phrases like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a/some etc.</th>
<th>+ noun</th>
<th>+ of</th>
<th>+ mine, yours, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>friends</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>neighbour</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>classmate</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A **neighbour of ours** means 'one of our neighbours'.

A **classmate of yours** means 'one of your classmates':

*Hi David. A classmate of yours phoned an hour ago.*

**Grammar in action**

6 We use phrases like **some friends of mine** to talk about our friends and family, and the things they're doing:

*Hello Nick. This is Fran. She's a flatmate of ours. A friend of Sally's has started to work in my office.*

**D Talking about the things our friends and family are doing**

Izzy is writing an email to her friend Rebecca. Use the words in brackets to help you to make phrases with mine, yours, my Dad's, etc.

Hi Rebecca,

I hope you're enjoying your new job. I think it was **a good idea of yours** (your idea was good) to go to America. I'm sure it's really interesting there. Things are OK here. Some **some friends of mine** (some of my friends) are going skiing next month, and I'm planning to go with them. Then, in the summer, a **one of my dad's friends** has invited all the family to his new house in France. I think it will be fun. By the way, do you remember a **a flatmate of yours** (one of our schoolfriends), Katie Gray? Well, a **a classmate of yours** (one of her flatmates) is a singer, and he's just made a CD! It's actually in the shops now. Can you believe it? Anyway, there's one more piece of news. A **a colleague of yours** (one of Paul's colleagues) has asked me to a party on Saturday night. I don't really know him, so I hope it was **a good idea of yours** (my idea was good) to say 'yes'! I'll tell you about it in my next message. Bye for now!

Izzy

**E Amy's party**

We use the apostrophe to talk about other people's things, family and friends; to talk about shops; to talk about news, business, politics and time; and to talk about the things our friends and family are doing. Amy is having a twenty-first birthday party. If the underlined phrases are wrong, rewrite them. If they're right, put a tick (√).

**DAVE** Did you go to the jeweller's today **?** I hope you didn't spend too much! We aren't rich, you know.

**MAISIE** Yes. Don't worry. I've got **Amy's bracelet** in my pocket. Who's that tall man in the corner?
DAVE I don't know. I suppose he's a friend of Amy's 1. Why?

MAISIE I'm sure he was on yesterdays' TV news 2. Anyway, here comes the birthday girl.

AMY How nice to see you both! I'm putting guest's coats 3 in the bedroom. Can I take yours?

MAISIE Dave will take them. Your necklace is beautiful, Amy. Is it a present?

AMY It is, actually. Marcus's brother 4 gave it to me. Have you met him? Daniel! (The tall man comes over.) Daniel, this is Maisie, a good friend of my 5. Maisie, this is Daniel.

MAISIE Pleased to meet you, but I'm sure I saw you yesterday on TV.

DANIEL Hi, Maisie. You probably saw the opening of my company's new shop 6 on Oxford Street. It's the biggest jeweller's in 7 central London now. So, if you ever want some new earrings, or your boyfriend wants to buy you a diamond ring, come and see us! In fact, you must come to next's month big sale 8. We'll have some very special prices.

MAISIE I'll introduce you to my husband in a moment, Daniel, but he isn't Londons' 9 number one shopper!

F A conversation with a friend in the street

Mandy and her son Freddie meet Toby in the street. Cross out any words that need an apostrophe, and rewrite them above. Look up the word 'lottery' before you do this exercise, if you don't know it.

MANDY Hi, Toby! How are you? How are things going?

TOBY Well, Mandy. There's not much happening really. My brother's 10 wife, Shelly, is going to have her fifth baby in June. The other four are girls, so she's hoping for a boy. Then, my best friend son has decided to go and live in India. He wants to make carpets, I think. And then, do you remember my sisters? Kate and Mirabelle? They have a florist in Birmingham. Well, Kate boss won two million pounds in last week lottery, and she gave Kate a hundred thousand pounds, and now Kate and Mirabelle are going to travel around the world, and my dad is going to buy my sister shop. What about you? Any news?

MANDY No, my life is really boring at the moment. I've just spent half an hour at the dentist. That's not very interesting, is it? And I've just been to the shoe shop as well and changed a pair of Freddie shoes, because they were too small. And then Carly, a friend of mine, is going to Spain on holiday next week. I think that's all. No, wait a moment. Do you remember my parent house in Cornwall?

TOBY Yes?

MANDY Well, I've got a photo of it. Would you like to see it?

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 125.
Adjectives

Red; small; square

1 Here are some common adjectives:

We use these words to describe people and things:

- It's a nice day, isn't it?
- She's got a little black dog.
- Your car looks new. Have you just bought it?

2 The form of adjectives never changes:

- a good book
- two good books

(not two goods books)

and when you use an adjective with a noun, the adjective normally comes first:

- We had a wonderful holiday.

(not a holiday wonderful.)

3 We don't normally use and when we put two adjectives before a noun:

- a friendly old man (not a friendly and old man)

except for colours:

- a black and white cat

4 In writing, you can decide to separate adjectives with commas (,):

- It's a beautiful, sad song.

but it's not necessary:

- It's just a cheap old coat.

5 We use adjectives to describe colour, size, shape, our opinions, what something is made of and nationality.

→ For more information on the order of adjectives and adjectives after a noun or a verb, see p. 100.

Grammar in action

1 We use adjectives to describe colour. We can tell our friends about something new that we've bought or have received:

- What does Steve want for his birthday? ~ A very expensive red and white bike, I'm afraid.

2 We use adjectives to describe size. Here, we're talking about a person's appearance:

- Which one is Keira? ~ She's the tall woman in the corner with short blonde hair.

3 We use adjectives to describe shape. This might be when we buy something for our home:

- We're looking for a dining room table. ~ Round or square, Madam?

A Colour, size and shape

(i) Underline all colour, size and shape adjectives in this email.

Hi Milly,

I can come round to your house in the evening, but I'm shopping during the day. I'm looking for a white jacket to wear with my blue and green dress at Julie's wedding. I also want two square Japanese plates, some red roses, a small, round lamp, and a short yellow skirt for my holiday. It's a long list, isn't it? I'd better go!

See you later, Kate.

(ii) Now write the adjectives in the correct spaces below.

1 Colour adjectives: white

2 Size adjectives: little

3 Shape adjectives: short
B Colour and size

Jamie and Marie have been invited to a summer party with their new neighbours. Add these words to their conversation:

tiny black and blue and red high short man tall green table yellow dress long blonde huge house

MARIE It's a nice party, but we don't really know anyone, do we? For example, who is that short man by the window?
JAMIE Oh, that's Phil. He's got a Ferrari. But what about the woman with hair? Do you recognize her?
MARIE I think so. She lives in the at the end of the road, with a wall.
JAMIE Of course! And she's got a white dog, hasn't she?
MARIE That's right. Anyway, I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?
JAMIE I think so. That girl in the has got a sandwich.
MARIE Look! There's a large in the garden with lots of food and drink. Let's go and eat!

C Size and shape

Look at the picture on the right, and then put the phrases below in the correct order to finish the advertisement for a new town called Springville.

Wouldn't you like to live in a nice town…

Wouldn't you like to live in a nice town...

Wouldn't you like to live in a nice town...
Adjectives
Order of adjectives

6 When we use more than one adjective before a noun, there is normally a correct order. For example:
   *a new French restaurant* (not *a French new restaurant*)

7 Adjectives that give our opinion, like nice, normally come before other adjectives that describe facts, like hot, so we say:
   *a nice hot bath* (not *a hot nice bath*)

More examples of words to give our opinion:
- good
- nice
- important
- special
- wonderful
- great
- fantastic
- beautiful
- funny
- (un)friendly
- bad
- horrible
- awful

8 When you have more than one fact adjective, we normally put them in this order before the noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>AGE</th>
<th>SHAPE</th>
<th>COLOUR</th>
<th>NATIONALITY</th>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an old</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>jumper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a small</td>
<td>German</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>town</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a round</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some common nationality adjectives:
- American
- Australian
- Chinese
- Dutch
- English
- French
- German
- Greek
- Indian
- Irish
- Italian
- Japanese
- Portuguese
- Russian
- Scottish
- Spanish
- Turkish
- Welsh

and some adjectives to describe materials (what something is made of):
- cotton
- silk
- gold
- silver
- metal
- plastic
- leather
- wooden

9 We can use an adjective on its own after be and also after:

look, seem, feel, taste, smell, sound

For example:
- *This cake is delicious!*
- *Some languages seem difficult.*
- *Your exam sounds horrible!*

Grammar in action

4 We use adjectives to describe our opinions, what we see, hear, taste and smell, or how we feel:
- *You smell fantastic!* ~ I know. I bought a wonderful new perfume today.
- *I feel awful today.* ~ Go home and have a good rest.

5 We use adjectives to describe nationality. Here we’re telling someone about our family history:
- *My mother is Canadian and my father’s Italian.* ~ Really? My grandparents were both Russian.

D Did you have a good summer?

If the opinion and fact adjectives are in the correct order, put a tick (√). If they’re wrong, cross them out and re-write them.

Bella: Hi Craig! Did you have a good summer?
Craig: Not bad, thanks. We had a special project at work, but I still had time for a fantastic holiday in Greece. The weather was beautiful. What about you?
Bella: Well, we stayed in a wonderful castle for a week in August, and then we visited my brother in his horrible flat in Edinburgh! But it was nice to see him.
Craig: Really? I know a fantastic hotel in Edinburgh. It’s a friendly city, isn’t it?
Bella: Sure, but busy in the summer. Anyway, we found a great restaurant near the Royal Mile, so we were quite happy!
E  For sale ads

Sometimes people advertise things they want to sell in local shops. Look at these ‘ads’ (advertisements) and put the adjectives in the correct order.

(0) Green leather handbag (Harrods’s) £10.

ring Stephanie on 07700900173

(Welsh/tall) wardrobe, good condition, only £30!

Email: joe45@yeah.co.uk

(old/beautiful/silk) Three blouses (two cream, one white) £12 each;

phone Mo on 0207 9460650

(narrow/wooden) 3 table:

£20 - great for barbecues!

Email: lola@lolaprice.com

(Turkish/red and green/fantastic) 4 carpet.

Talk to Kev on 07700900214

(silver/wide) 5 belt, £5 - excellent condition.

Ring Fay on 07700900761

F  A meal in an international restaurant

Carol and Mark are looking for a place to eat. Choose the correct verb, and add an s if you need to.

CAROL  This restaurant  looks (smell/look) friendly, and the menu 1 (seem/taste) interesting. Shall we go in?

MARK  Sure. After you. (They enter.) Is it Spanish or African or what?

CAROL  I don’t know. The music 2 (sound/look) South American, actually.

MARK  But the food 3 (taste/smell) Indian! Shall we sit down?

WAITER  Welcome! You both 4 (feel/look) hungry. You’ve come to the right place. Table for two here by the window?

CAROL  Thanks, but it 5 (feel/sound) a little cold here. Can we sit over there?

WAITER  Of course. Here’s something to eat. I’ll get you the menus and some water.

CAROL  This dish 6 (taste/look) a bit funny. You can try it first, if you like!

MARK  OK. (He eats some.) It 7 (taste/sound) quite nice - Mexican, perhaps?

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 125.
26  Comparative and superlative adjectives

Comparative adjectives

1. Look at this conversation:
   Where do you want to eat tonight? At the hotel or in town? ~ It'll be cheaper and more interesting in town. Have you been to Paulos? ~ No. Is it good? ~ Well, it's noisier than the hotel, but it's better fun.

2. The words cheaper, more interesting, noisier and better are comparative adjectives. To form them:
   - For short adjectives (one syllable), add -er:
     small → smaller  short → shorter
tall → taller  old → older
new → newer  slow → slower
   - or, if the adjective ends in -e, add -r:
     nice → nicer  wide → wider  late → later
   - For short adjectives, ending in one vowel and one consonant, we double the consonant before adding -er:
     big → bigger  sad → sadder
hot → hotter  fat → fatter
thin → thinner  wet → wetter
   - These short adjectives are irregular:
     good → better  bad → worse  far → farther
   - For most long adjectives (two syllables or more), we put more first:
     important → more important
expensive → more expensive
   - For long adjectives ending in -y, we use -ier:
     happy → happier  early → earlier

3. We often use than with comparative adjectives:
   Scotland is wetter than England.
   but it's not necessary:
   It's colder today, isn't it? (= it's colder than yesterday)

4. We use comparatives to compare two things:
   England is bigger than Scotland.

   **Tip**
   We sometimes use a lot/much or a bit/a little:
   You can lift it. You're a bit stronger than me!
The exam today was a bit easier, wasn't it?

**Grammar in action**

1. We use comparative adjectives to compare things that we buy, and services that we use:
   I like this jumper better, but it's more expensive.
   Don't drive. It's faster by train.

2. We use comparative adjectives to compare places:
   Her new flat is nicer than her old one. It's much bigger.
   Spain will be sunnier than France at Easter.

3. We use comparative adjectives to compare people.
   We might talk about how a friend has changed:
   Tom is much friendlier than he was when we were at school.
   He looks different too: he's taller than me now, his hair is longer and he seems happier.

**A  Comparing things we buy and services we use**

Fareed is buying a new laptop. Change the underlined words into comparative adjectives.

WOMAN  These two, the Helix 400 and the VKC 28, are very popular at the moment, sir. The VKC 28 is a little new newer, but the Helix is cheap cheaper.

FAREED  Can I touch them? Which one is heavy heavy?

WOMAN  The VKC is light lighter than the Helix, but it's also wide wider.

FAREED  Yes, you're right. The VKC is big bigger, but much thin thinner. And I suppose it's powerful powerful, too, if it's newer.
WOMAN It's fast, yes. But the Helix is still a good computer. We sell hundreds every week.

FAREED You said the VKC was expensive. What's the difference in price?

WOMAN The Helix is £400 and the VKC is £600.

FAREED Thanks. I think the VKC is a little good, but I'll take the Helix!

B Comparing places

'Visit England' is a magazine in English for Polish students. In this article, the writer is comparing study holidays in Liverpool, a big city in Lancashire, and in Beverley, a small town in Yorkshire. Circle the correct comparative adjectives.

Of course, Liverpool is much bigger than Beverley. It's also famous/more famous, much noisier/noisier, and, when I was there, wetter/wetter. I spent two weeks in the Lancashire city last March, and I loved it. I stayed in the more old/older, busier/busier part of the city, near the river Mersey. I went on the Beatles tour, and I watched Liverpool FC play against Newcastle. (Newcastle won.) It was a good game, but football matches in England are much more expensive than/as in Poland - I had to pay £45 for a ticket. Then I spent a week in Beverley at a smaller/more small language school. Beverley is beautiful/more beautiful than Liverpool, and the people were more friendlier/more friendly to me. It's a richer/more rich and cleaner/cleaner place too - but perhaps Liverpool is more interesting/interestinger in the end.

C Comparing people

Dan is having breakfast with his 10-year-old daughter Amy and his 4-year-old son, Josh. Use the words in brackets to make phrases with comparative adjectives. Use short forms of the verb be.

DAN You're earlier for breakfast! (You/be/early/for breakfast) today, Amy. Is it a normal day for you?

AMY No. Mr Brown is teaching us today and tomorrow. (He/be/bad/than) Mr Samson. (He/be/fat), too.

DAN I'm sure Mr Brown isn't fat, Amy.

AMY (Mr Samson/be/nice and funny), and (he/be/intelligent).

DAN All your teachers are intelligent, Amy. I'm sure it's a very difficult job for Mr Brown, with a class of 10 year-old kids.

JOSH (Be/it/difficult/than) your job, Daddy?

DAN I don't know. (I think/I/be/lucky), because I can work at home.

AMY Daddy, the girl on 'Top TV'?

JOSH (You/be/silly/than) her!

DAN You're both pretty, Amy. Are you ready for school?

JOSH Yes, but I want some more toast, please.

DAN (You/be/hungry/than) usual this morning, Amy.

AMY Because (it/be/cold) today. Daddy, do you think Mr Brown eats a lot because he's cold?
Comparatives and superlatives

Superlative adjectives

5 Look at this example:

‘Paulo’s’ is the best restaurant in town. Their pizzas are the biggest and the most delicious!

6 The best, the biggest and the most delicious are superlative forms. To make superlative adjectives:

- For short adjectives and long adjectives ending in -y, take away the final r of the comparative form, and add -est:

  small → smaller → the smallest
  nice → nicer → the nicest
  big → bigger → the biggest
  happy → happier → the happiest

- For long adjectives, change more to most:

  important → more important
  → the most important

- Irregular forms:

  good → better → the best
  bad → worse → the worst
  far → farther → the farthest

7 Before superlative adjectives, we usually use the:

  Picasso is the most famous Spanish painter.

After superlative adjectives, we sometimes use of:

Sunday is the best day of the week!
It’s the smallest of the three hotels.

but we use in for places and groups of people:

She’s the richest woman in Britain. (not of Britain)
Dave is the funniest student in the class.

8 We use superlatives when we’re comparing more than two things:

There are four countries in the UK. England is the biggest.

We sometimes use the present perfect with ever after the superlative form:

What is the worst meal you’ve ever eaten?
This is the most beautiful park I’ve ever seen!

Grammar in action

4 We use superlative adjectives to talk about the best, worst or most interesting places, people and things:

Heathrow is the busiest airport in Europe.
This is the most comfortable room in the house.
It’s the fastest family car in the UK.
It’s the saddest film we’ve ever seen.

D Talking about the best things about the Seychelles

Look at the home page of the website for ‘Seychelles Holidays’. Change the underlined words into superlative adjectives.

Seychelles Facts (and Opinions!):

- The Republic of Seychelles is the small smallest African country, and it’s the
good place in the world for your holiday!

- The big of the hundred and fifty five islands is Mahé, with an
  international airport.

- The Seychelles Islands have the beautiful beaches you’ve ever seen,
  and the warm seas.

- The sunny times of year are December and January (but they’re
  also the expensive times to visit).

- The peaceful island is La Digue - it’s like a journey into the past!

- The nice restaurant in the Seychelles is ‘André’s’ in Anse Lazio.
  (Another free meal, please, André!)

- The best Creole music is by the famous Seychelles musician, the
  wonderful Jean-Marc Volcy!
**E Choosing a flat in London**

We use comparatives to compare things we buy: services we use: places; and people. We use superlatives to talk about the best, worst or most interesting places, people and things. Sean and Thierry want to share a flat in London. They've looked at three flats, and now they're in a café. Add these words to the conversation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ever in most of the than dirtier expensive friendlier nearer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

SEAN What did you think about the two flats in Camden?

THIERRY The first one was bigger, but it was dirtier too.

SEAN You can clean a flat though, can't you?

THIERRY Sure, but the second one was nicer, and the landlord was friendlier.

SEAN Perhaps, but it was also noisier the first one, because it was nearer to the road.

SEAN They weren't the best flats we've seen, were they? What about the one in Crouch End?

THIERRY It was the most comfortable the three flats.

SEAN I agree. But it was also the most ? We haven't got enough money, have we?

THIERRY Shall we have another coffee? They make best cappuccino north London here. We can look at some more flats this afternoon.

**F Choosing a singer for a musical**

Desmond and Jilly are trying to find a singer for a new musical. They saw three singers this morning. Change the underlined adjectives into comparatives or superlatives.

Hi Desmond,

What did you think about the guys this morning? Charlie was the loud singer I've ever heard! My ears are still hurting. He's probably got the strong voice in London. I liked him, but Luke was a good dancer than him, and his voice was good too. But Luke hasn't sung in a big show before. Matt, the tall guy today, looked great, but his voice was weak than Charlie's. We've got to decide soon, but we could see them again tomorrow. What do you think?

Jilly

Hi Jilly,

It was difficult today with the guys than yesterday with the girls. Luke is the young , isn't he? He was also the good dancer this morning, but I don't think he's ready. It's hard to sing every night for six weeks, isn't it? Matt is old than Luke, and he's got the right face, but he's also got the bad voice of the three, I'm afraid. In my view, Charlie is the of the guys. We can teach him to dance later!

Desmond

**OVER TO YOU** Now go to page 125.
27 Adverbs of manner
Quickly; easily; carefully

1 Look at this conversation:
"Are you driving to the match? -- Yes. I don't think we'll win today, because we're playing so badly at the moment. -- Well, drive carefully. The roads will be busy."

2 Badly and carefully are adverbs of manner. We form them from adjectives:
For most adverbs, add -ly to the adjective:
clear → clearly correct → correctly loud → loudly perfect → perfectly polite → politely proper → properly quick → quickly quiet → quietly secret → secretly serious → seriously silent → silently slow → slowly

For adjectives ending in consonant (b, c, d, etc.) + -y, change -y to -ily:
angry → angrily easy → easily heavy → heavily noisy → noisily

For adjectives ending in -ful, double the l before adding -y:
beautiful → beautifully careful → carefully successful → successfully

For adjectives ending in -le, take away -e, and add -ly:
simple → simply terrible → terribly

3 Adverbs of manner tell us how things happen. They normally go after the verb:
"It rained heavily all morning.
You need to walk carefully in the snow."
or after the verb + direct object:
"He sang the song beautifully at the concert.
(The word 'song' is a direct object.)"

Grammar in action

1 We use adverbs of manner to describe how things happen. Here, a boss is talking about her employee:
"She does her job perfectly. She speaks clearly and she works quickly. She sells our products successfully."

2 We use adverbs of manner to tell people how to do things, such as instructions for cooking:
"Add the eggs and flour carefully, then stir the mixture slowly."

A Describing how things happen (1)

Karen is at home with her flatmates, when her phone rings. Cross out the adjectives and add their adverb forms to the conversation.

KAREN Hello? Shula? I'm sorry, I can't hear you. My friends are talking so loudly. Just a moment. Mike, Joss! Shut up! That's better. They're talking quietly now. Yes, I'm OK, but I've got a problem. I bought a new computer yesterday. I think I've fixed it correctly, but it doesn't work very well. What? You'll come round? That's very kind, but you know it's raining heavily?

OK. Thanks. See you later.

KAREN (Ten minutes later) Thanks for coming, Shula. I fixed the computer and the printer carefully, but something is wrong. Do you think there's a problem with the hard drive?

SHULA I'll have a look.

KAREN I'm sure I did it properly.

SHULA Everything looks OK. I'm going to try to print something.

KAREN It's printing very (noisy), isn't it?
SHULA Yes, but it's only because the cable is in the wrong place. Don't worry. Can you lift the keyboard ................. (slow), please? I'll hold the mouse.

KAREN The noise has stopped. How did you do it ................. (easy)?

SHULA Because I'm fantastic! Can you make me a cup of tea now, please?

B Telling people how to do things

Sarah is going to work as a tour guide for tourists visiting her home town, Gloucester. Debbie, her boss, is giving her some advice. Use the first two letters of the adverbs in brackets to add the full words to the conversation. All of the adverbs are in the lists on page 106, but try to do this exercise without looking back.

DEBBIE You have to speak (cl) ............., of course, so everyone understands you, and you should also speak (co) .................. People will tell you if you make grammatical mistakes!

SARAH I'll remember that. When we're in the town centre, can we go into the market?

DEBBIE Yes, that's a good idea, but there's a lot of noise in there, so you have to talk (lo) .................. And after the market, you can go towards the cathedral, but walk (sl) ................. - there's a lot to see on the way.

SARAH OK. I can show them some of the old shops. By the way, I think people have to pay something when they enter the cathedral, don't they? What should I do?

DEBBIE Don't worry. Just ask the group (po) ................. to put some money in the glass box. It won't be a problem. And remember to talk (qu) ................. in the cathedral! They don't like noisy groups.

SARAH Do you think the group will know it's my first time as a guide?

DEBBIE Don't worry. You'll be great. I'm sure you'll do it (be) ..................

C Describing how things happen (2)

Now Sarah is emailing Debbie to tell her about her first tour. First make these adjectives into adverbs:

proper .............. properly quick ................. slow .................

loud .............. angrily heavy .................

Then add them in order into the underlined parts of the text.

The tour went well, I think. I hope I did it ................. I met the group at the bus station at nine thirty. We walked into the town centre ................. and I took them to the market. We had a really good time there. Then we walked to the cathedral ................. But there was one problem in the cathedral. One of the tourists asked a question ................. and a tall woman said something ................. But it was OK in the end. We had a good visit. Unfortunately, it rained on the way back to the bus station ................. but most of the group had umbrellas!

Best wishes,

Sarah
Adverbs of manner
Well; early; fast

4 Well
The adverb of manner from the adjective good is well:
She plays most sports well.
I slept well last night.

We often use very and quite with well:
 Fran speaks Chinese very well.
I don't remember films very well.
Tom and I both swim quite well.

› For more information on very/quite + adverb, see Unit 28 on p. 110.

To do well means ‘to be successful’:
He's doing well at university.
The company isn't doing very well this year.

But remember that well can also be an adjective:
How are you? ~ I'm very well, thanks.

and a word we use when we start to speak:
What are you doing this evening? ~ Well, I think we'll just watch TV.

Look at the way we use the expression well done:
I passed the exam. ~ Well done!

5 These adverbs of manner have the same form as their adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>early</th>
<th>late</th>
<th>fast</th>
<th>hard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The bus is late again. (late = adjective)
We mustn't arrive late! (late = adverb)

Here are some more examples of these adverbs:
Do you get up early?
He drives very fast. It's dangerous.
We're all working hard for the exams.

Grammar in action

3 We use well to talk about our ability to do things. Here, a teacher is talking about a student's progress at school:
He can't dance well, I'm afraid, but he speaks French well and is doing well in chemistry.

4 We use early and late to talk about when things happen, and fast and hard to talk and ask about how we do things, such as on a journey:
That's our bus! It's arrived early!
How fast can you run? We don't want to miss it!

D Talking about our ability to do things

Molly is sending an email to Dave on Saturday morning. After the example, add well five more times.

Hi Dave

I went to Marie’s concert yesterday evening. She sang well. She plays the piano very, too. I’m not very good at music, as you know, but I can cook quite, and I can paint, so I’m lucky, aren’t I? Anyway, do you want to meet later today? I don’t really want to go to Sammy’s party this evening. I didn’t sleep very last night, so I feel tired today. We could go to that new Japanese restaurant on Dean Street. Greg says that it’s doing.

Hope to hear from you later.
E  When things happen and how things happen

Dave is replying to Molly's email. Add the correct adverbs to their conversation.

Hi Molly,
I had a terrible day yesterday. First, I got up very late (hard/late) so I had to eat my breakfast fast/early. Then I cycled to work, but it was raining hard/fast, so I got very wet. Anyway, I worked really hard/early all morning, and I ate lunch fast/early, at about twelve o'clock. After lunch, the sun was shining, so I went for a walk, and I forgot about my meeting with my boss at twelve thirty! I ran fast/early back to the office, but I arrived fifteen minutes late/early. He wasn't happy. The rest of the day was OK. I just cycled home, ate my dinner and went to bed early/hard! Shall I meet you at the restaurant at one o'clock? I won't be late!

F  A skiing holiday

We use adverbs of manner to talk about the way things happen; to tell people how to do things; and to talk about our ability to do things. Ben is at an internet café with his friend Candy on Friday evening. If there is an adjective in brackets at the beginning of a line, add its adverb form in the correct place.

well

BEN  (good) Can you ski, Candy?
CANDY  Yes, I'm pretty good. Why are you asking?
BEN  (early) There's a skiing holiday here for two in Switzerland for £50, if we leave in the morning.
CANDY  Really? Why is it so cheap? Is there any snow there at the moment?
BEN  (hard) Yes, it snowed last week in Austria and Switzerland.
CANDY  (quick) Can we pack enough? It's nine o'clock already.
BEN  (bad) I think so. But there is one problem. I ski very, I'm afraid.
CANDY  (fast) Oh. Well, there will be a ski school. I'm sure you'll learn.
BEN  Give me some advice.
CANDY  (correct) You have to move. That's the important thing.
BEN  (slow) And you have to turn, don't you?
CANDY  And you have to fall in the snow ten times an hour! Come on, let's go home and pack.

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 126.
Adverbs of degree
Very hungry; really quietly

1 Look at these examples:
She speaks very quietly. I can't understand her. I'm quite hungry. Shall we stop for a sandwich?

2 Very and quite are adverbs of degree. We can use these adverbs before adjectives:
I loved the film. It's very funny.
or before other adverbs:
He spoke quite angrily to us.

3 We use very to make the adjective stronger. We can also use really:
It was very kind of you to help me.
I'm really tired. I could sleep for hours!

4 Quite is not as strong as very. We use it to make the adjective weaker. We can also use fairly or, in informal English, pretty:
Harry is quite good at tennis. (= He's good at tennis, but not wonderful.)
The exam today was fairly easy. (= It was OK, but not simple.)
You don't need a coat. It's pretty warm outside. (= The weather is warm, but it isn't hot.)

5 We can also use really and quite with these verbs:
really + enjoy, like, love, want, need, hope, hate
quite + enjoy, like

Here are some examples:
My mum really loves the Beatles.
He really hates fish.
We quite enjoy musicals.
I quite like Shakespeare, but I prefer modern writers.
We can't use very in this way:
I very enjoy football.

Grammar in action

1 We use very, and really to say things strongly, when we want to give extra emphasis to what we say. We can do this when we tell a friend about a particularly good or bad experience we've had:
The roads were really busy and we arrived very late at the church. I felt really terrible. But the bride was really beautiful and we were very pleased to be at the wedding.

2 We can use quite, fairly and pretty to say things less strongly. Here we are telling a friend about a book:
This book isn't fantastic but I quite like the story. It's fairly long and quite complicated, and the characters are pretty boring.

A Saying things about our lives more strongly

Naomi, Etsuko and Henry are meeting in a café after work. Put the words in brackets in the correct order and add them to the conversation. Use capital letters where necessary.

ETSUKO I'm really tired. (tired/I'm/really). How was your day, Henry? 1
HENRY OK thanks, Etsuko. (very/is/my new colleague Simon/friendly). What about you, Naomi? 2
NAOMI Terrible! (important/meeting/really/for a I was late) in the morning, and then I had a headache all afternoon.
ETSUKO That's too bad. (need/I/another coffee/really). I'll get three more.
HENRY What did your boss say, Naomi, when you were late?
NAOMI (very/she/angry/was), because we had visitors from France, and they arrived an hour early! 4
HENRY Oh dear. Anyway, it's Friday tomorrow. (l/weekends/love/really/)! 5
NAOMI Me, too. I want to find a new sofa, but (cheap/to be/very/it's got). I don't have much money left after my holiday.
HENRY Well, (you find one/hope that/really/I). 7
**B  Saying things less strongly**

Paul is a British student studying for a semester in Toronto. Look at his blog. Rewrite the underlined parts of the text, adding the adverbs in brackets.

I've just finished my first month in Toronto. It's been hard. (quite)

It's been quite hard. ⁶ It's a new country for me, after all. I was lucky, (fairly) ¹, I arrived late, but I got a flat quickly. (quite) ². My new flatmate is called Billy. He's funny, (pretty) ³, so we laugh a lot. It's good. And I like the food here (quite) ⁴ — you get a great burger in the college café, for example. Billy has a car, so he gives me a lift to college sometimes, and the bus service is good (quite) ⁵ — but it takes about an hour.

Our teachers are young, (fairly) ⁶, but there are about a hundred students in my class, so you can't really ask questions. Oh, and it's cold here! (pretty) ⁷!

I bought some warm clothes, but they were expensive. (quite) ⁸. Anyway, I've got to go now. Billy wants me to watch an American football game with him. Bye for now!

**C  Giving extra emphasis or saying things less strongly**

Liz's company is going to sell a new type of car, called the 'Sunflower'. Liz is talking to Charlie and George. Say things more strongly (M) or less strongly (L) by crossing out the wrong adverb.

**LIZ** (M)⁹ When do you think we should launch the Sunflower? It's quite/really important to find the right time of year.

**CHARLIE** (L)¹ Yes. August would be quite/very good, I think.

**GEORGE** (L)² No, that's late, Charlie. It's a summer car, I know, but consumers buy cars fairly/really early.

**LIZ** OK, we could launch the car in May, then.

**CHARLIE** (M)³ All right, but that's pretty/very soon. We need to finish the TV ad.

**GEORGE** (L)⁴ I saw the idea for the advert yesterday, Charlie. It's quite/very serious, isn't it?

**CHARLIE** Yes, but I think people will remember it.

**LIZ** (M)⁵ Sure, they'll remember it, Charlie. It's fairly/very beautiful.

**GEORGE** (L)⁶ But it's also really/pretty sad. My question is: do we want a sad ad?

**LIZ** George may be right. It is a summer car after all, Charlie. Summer normally means holidays. It's a happy time.

**CHARLIE** (M)⁷ But we've got Sam Taylor in the ad. He's really/quite famous!

**GEORGE** He's a wonderful actor, Charlie, but he's a wonderful actor in some very sad films.

**LIZ** (M)⁸ George is right. Charlie, I'd like you and George to work together on this. Is that OK? I think you could be fairly/very special together. What do you think?

**CHARLIE** I'm sure it will be fine, thanks, Liz.
Adverbs of degree
Quite a big cake; a really good book

6 When we use quite with an adjective and noun, we normally put quite before a/an:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>quite</th>
<th>+ a/an</th>
<th>+ adjective</th>
<th>+ noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's quite a long journey.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

But we put very, really, fairly and pretty after a/an:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a/an</th>
<th>+ very, really, etc. + adjective + noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's a really good film.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also use quite with a lot of:

I've bought quite a lot of vegetables.

(We can't use very, really, fairly and pretty in this way.)

Grammar in action
B We normally use quite before a/an + adjective + noun, and we also use quite with a lot of to add more detail when we describe something. Here, we are describing a trip to the cinema:

It was quite a good film. We ate quite a lot of popcorn.

**TIP**

With some adjectives, like right and true, quite means ‘completely’:

That's quite true. (= That's completely true.)

D Quite a hard life

Read the beginning of this magazine article. Then add the correct adverbs from the brackets.

My husband and I have a hotel in France. It's a hard life. We get up early because there are (fairly/quite) a lot of things to do every day. After breakfast, I go to the local market. All my friends go to the market, and I (very/really) enjoy it. There's a good butcher's there, and a (fairly/quite) cheap greengrocer's. Back at the hotel there are (fairly/quite) a lot of sheets, pillowcases, towels and basins to clean! It's a (fairly/quite) difficult job, because we don't have a washing machine at the moment! We have (pretty/quite) a small restaurant at the hotel, but it gets busy at lunchtime. My husband cooks in the kitchen, and I make sure that everything is OK in the restaurant. (Fairly/Quite) a lot of local people come for their lunch, and we (fairly/really) like to give them a good, hot meal at a (pretty/quite) low price. After lunch, I usually sleep for half an hour, and then the afternoon begins! It's always a (fairly/really) long day, but we love it here!
E  A gallery opening

Ben, Angie and Derek are at a 'gallery opening' (the first night of an art show) in Glasgow. Decide if the adverbs of degree have been used correctly. If they have, put a tick (√). If not, write the correct word(s).

BEN  The colours in her paintings are quite .......................... 0 good, you know.

ANGIE  Oh yes. I fairly ...................................... really love her paintings!

DEREK  I don't agree. Look at this painting, 'The Evening Sea', for example. The sky is quite .......................... 1 nice, I suppose, but the sea is pretty .......................... 2 horrible.

ANGIE  You may not like it, but someone will pay pretty ...................................... 3 a lot of money for it!

BEN  Sssh! She's here tonight, you know.

DEREK  I very ...................................... hope she is! I can give her my opinion.

ANGIE  She comes to all her first nights, but she wears a very ...................................... 5 long wig!

DEREK  I don't believe you!

ANGIE  Look! I'm fairly ...................................... sure that's her in the corner.

DEREK  Really? She's fairly ...................................... a young woman, then.

BEN  Do you very ...................................... want to speak to her, Derek?

DEREK  Well, I can tell her that the sky in her painting is pretty nice ...................................... , can't I?

F  An interview in central London

A journalist is interviewing people who work in central London. Add the adverbs in brackets in the order in which you see them.

WOMAN  You work in a travel agent's at Oxford Circus. What's it like?

MAN  (pretty, really) Well, it's / busy, of course, but I / like this part of London.

WOMAN  Why is that?

MAN  (quite, quite, very) First of all, it's a friendly place, in fact. For example, there are a lot of cafés where people go with colleagues for coffee, lunch, etc. That's nice.

WOMAN  (quite, fairly) And I suppose you see a lot of famous people.

MAN  (quite) Yes, but I'm more interested in the shops. They're expensive, but you can get any new CD or DVD immediately!

WOMAN  So are there any problems here?

MAN  (really, pretty, very) Yes. The underground is busy in the morning, but if you drive to work, it's hard to find a parking space! Sometimes I arrive early at work, but it's still fairly busy.

WOMAN  Well, thanks very much for your time.

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 126.
1 Look at this conversation:
Darling, where are you? ~ I'm at Heathrow. Why? ~
You've left your passport in the living room. ~ Oh no.
~ I'm afraid so. It's on the table.

2 Place
We use at, in and on to say where people/things are.

We use at to talk about a point where something
happens.

We use in with enclosed spaces and countries.

We use on with surfaces, or with lines like a river or road.

3 Here are some more examples of at, in and on:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at the bus stop</th>
<th>at the train station</th>
<th>at the office</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at the doctor's</td>
<td>at the supermarket</td>
<td>at a party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at Sue's (house)</td>
<td>at the door</td>
<td>at the front/back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the library</td>
<td>in the park</td>
<td>in London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the pool</td>
<td>in the photo</td>
<td>in a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the car</td>
<td>on the chair</td>
<td>on the shelf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the train</td>
<td>on the road</td>
<td>on the beach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the first floor</td>
<td>on the left/right</td>
<td>on page seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the menu</td>
<td>on the internet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Sometimes we don't use the:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at home</th>
<th>at school</th>
<th>at college</th>
<th>at work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in bed</td>
<td>in town</td>
<td>in hospital</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 We also use above, behind and under to say where things are:

Hi Dave,
I'm very comfortable in my new room. I've put a nice
painting above the desk. Fifi, my cat, is sleeping
under the bed and all
my empty suitcases are behind
the sofa!
Love, Debbie

Grammar in action

1 We often use at, in and on to talk about travel:
I'm on the train. Can you meet me at the station?
How long are you going to stay in Australia?
Shall we get off the train at Cardiff?

2 We normally use at to talk about where people are:
I'm at the office, Hugh. I'll be home about seven.
Sara's at the dentist's, but she'll be back later.
Is there someone at the door?

3 We often use at, in, above, behind and under to
describe where we have put things at home:
My bag's at home! I think I've left it under the bed. Or
it might be on the desk, or behind the piano, or in my
wardrobe!

A Talking about travel

Luke, Angie and Dave are on holiday in Goa. Luke and Angie are taking a local bus.
Add the correct prepositions to their conversation.

ANGIE It's a lovely day, isn't it?
ANGIE That's true. Are we going to get off the bus .......... 1 (at/in) Sammi's café?
LUKE OK. We could ring Dave, and have a picnic .......... 2 (on/in) the beach this afternoon.
ANGIE Good idea. (She takes out her mobile phone.) Dave? Hi! Luke and I are .......... 3
(at/on) the bus. Shall we meet later for a beach picnic? Excellent! I'll give you a ring.
LUKE  A picnic in November! This is different life [(at/in) Glasgow, isn’t it?]
ANGIE  Luke? Why is the bus stopping here?
LUKE  Because there’s a monkey [(at/on) the road. Have you got your camera?]
ANGIE  No. I left it [(in/on) the car, I’m afraid. I’ll get it later.
LUKE  Don’t worry. We’ll see more monkeys while we’re here.

B  Talking about where people are
Joe gets home and asks Mandy where their flatmates are. Use at and the pictures to complete the conversation.

JOE  It’s very quiet, Mandy. Where is everybody?
MANDY  Well, Ethan’s at the greengrocer’s. He’s getting some tomatoes, I think. Millie’s at [the] greengrocer’s. She’s working late this week. Dylan’s father is arriving from America, so he’s [at/on] the airport. And Megan is having a problem with one of her teeth, so she’s [at/on] the dentist’s. Now Jake is [above/on] the car, because he wants to get the sports results, and Jasmine is [below/behind] the bus. Does that answer your question?

C  Talking about where things are
Phil is staying in Diana’s house. Read her letter to him, and use the picture of her kitchen to add the correct prepositions.

Dear Phil,
I hope you enjoy your week in Norfolk.
Please use the food [in] my kitchen.
There’s a bag of potatoes [(on) the table. They’re from my garden. There’s a loaf of brown bread [(on) a small cupboard [(on) the fridge. I made it myself two days ago. I hope you like it. There’s also a tin of biscuits [(on) the table, and some fruit [(on) the biscuits. Help yourself!
And you’ll find some vegetables under the window [(under) the back of the kitchen. They’re not from my garden. They’re from a local farm. Finally, if you look through the window, you’ll see some apple trees [(under) the garden. The apples are delicious!
Best wishes,
Diana

Help yourself means ‘take what you want.’

Prepositions  |  115
Prepositions

Prepositions of time (at, in, on, from, to, until)

6 Time
We use at, in, on, from and to/until to talk about time.

7 We use at for 'clock' times and meals:
The film starts at eight thirty.
Sleep well. I'll see you at breakfast.

8 We also use at in these expressions:

at night at the weekend at the moment
at Christmas at Easter

I always lock the door at night.

9 We use in for parts of the day, months, seasons and years:
in the afternoon in June
in the summer in 2001

Have you ever been to Boston in the autumn.

10 And we use on for days and dates:
on Wednesday on the thirteenth of August

Shall we go shopping on Saturday afternoon?

11 When we use this, next, and every, we don't use at, in, or on:
I wake up two or three times at every night.
We'll go to the match on next Saturday.

12 We use from or from...to/until to talk about periods of time:
Call me later, Sam. I'll be at home from six.
(= from six and for the rest of the evening.)

Grammar in action

4 We can use at, in and on to talk about time. Here, we are making a plan to meet a friend:
I'll see you at the weekend. Shall we meet in the afternoon on Saturday? ~ Can I be in town at 2 p.m.
See you then!

5 We can use from and to/until to talk about a period of time, such as the opening times of a shop:
The library is closed from 1 p.m. until 2 p.m.
The supermarket is open from 10 a.m. till 4 p.m. on a Sunday.

6 We can use from and to/until to tell someone how long we do an activity for. We might talk about our daily routine, or our holiday plans:
I work from 9 to 5, but I'm always out at lunch from 12.30 to 1.00.

D Arranging to meet at lunchtime

Carol wants to meet a business colleague for lunch. Cross out eight wrong words after the example in her message.

Hi Alex,
Can we meet today? I'm flying to Mumbai on Friday, and I'd like to talk to you about the trip. Who did you meet when you went there on in May last year? My trip to Mumbai is quite short. I'll be back on Thursday in next week. I'm trying to fix some meetings at in the moment, but I need your help! Anyway, I'm in a meeting on this morning until from ten till eleven, but we could meet on at lunch, if you like. I'm going to visit our Bristol office in this afternoon, so could we have an early lunch at in twelve o' clock perhaps? If that's not possible, maybe we could meet on in the evening? I hope to hear from you soon.
Best,
Caroline

The museum is open from 9 a.m. to 6 p.m.
I waited for you from 4 p.m. until 5 p.m!

In spoken and informal English, we often use till or 'til instead of until:
She played that CD from midday till midnight!
E  We use prepositions to talk about where people and things are; and to talk about travel, time, dates, and days. Leo is writing to his sister from a campsite in Italy. First, look at this picture of the campsite and the photo. Then add the correct prepositions.

Hi Sara!

We’re looking forward to seeing you next Sunday ... (under/at/above) the campsite. We’re having a good time. Sam and I run ... (until/at/in) the mornings. Anna swims ... (in/on/under) the pool, and Eve gets croissants for our breakfast ... (on/at/to) a baker’s in town. Then from about ten o’clock ... (from/till/at) lunch, we do what we want. There’s a wood ... (above/from/beyond) the campsite, so sometimes I go for a walk. We normally have lunch ... (at/on/behind) one o’clock, and then we go ... (in/at/on) the car to the seaside. Sometimes we have a picnic ... (above/on/in) the beach, or we drive to one of the towns or cities nearby. ... (At/On/From) the moment, I’m emailing you from an internet café ... (under/in/on) Perpignan. ... (On/In/At) night, we cook a meal. I’ve attached a photo of our kitchen! ... (On/In/At) the photo you can see there’s a small fridge ... (under/behind/above) the table, and there are lots of pots and pans ... (under/on/above) the cooker! The weather is beautiful now, but the campsite manager says there was snow a month ago ... (in/at/on) Easter!

See you soon, Leo

F  A family meal

Peggy and her husband Bill are having dinner with their children and their guest from Colombia, Santiago. Choose the correct words from the brackets.

BILL  We’re ... (in/on/at/above) the dining room, everyone! Dinner is ... (in/on/at/above) the table! Where are the twins?

PEGGY  Tom’s ... (behind/at/in/on) town, Bill, and Katie’s working ... (until/at/on) eight every day this week to make some extra money.

SANTIAGO  Mia’s ... (at/in/behind/on) home, but I think she’s ... (on/in/at/above) her bedroom.

AMY  Where’s my knife, Mummy?

PEGGY  It’s on the floor ... (above/in/to/under) your chair, darling. Give it to me. I’ll wash it for you.

BILL  Did you get your ticket ... (on/under/at/to) the travel agent’s today?

SANTIAGO  No, Bill. I got there at a quarter to six, and it was closed. It’s open ... (to/at/in/from) nine thirty to five thirty. I’ll go again tomorrow, or I’ll buy it ... (under/in/on/at) the internet. I hope to fly home ... (in/on/at/till) the twentieth of June.

PEGGY  But you’ll come back again ... (on/at/this/until) September, won’t you, Santiago?

SANTIAGO  That’s right. I’m going to study economics ... (on/at/in/to) university.

OVER TO YOU  Now go to page 126.
30 Conjunctions
And; but; or

1 Sentences in English always need a subject and a verb, but they can be quite short:

Tom is reading. I love chips!
She's at work. I'm tired.
You look sad. He hasn't arrived.

We make sentences longer with the conjunctions and, but and or:
I love chips, but I don't like fish.

2 And
We use and to connect ideas and things:
I bought some trousers, a jumper and a shirt.
I'm cold and hungry.
Fran works in a bank, and Don teaches French.
I did some homework, and then I went to bed.

We sometimes use go and... + verb:
Shall we go and get a DVD?
I must go and do some work now.

3 But
We use but to connect two different ideas:
I worked really hard, but I didn't pass the exam.
It's a nice shop, but why is it so expensive?

4 Or
We use or to connect two possibilities:
Would you like a biscuit or a piece of cake?
Shall we have a meal or see a play?

We sometimes use or in negative sentences:
We haven't got any fruit or cheese, I'm afraid.

5 Comma (,)
In lists with and, we use commas like this:
You'll need paper, a pen, your book and a dictionary.
And we often use a comma (,) before and and but in longer sentences (sentences with a verb in each part, for example):
He finished his meal, and then he went out.
I bought a new CD player, but it didn't work.

6 We don't need to repeat unnecessary words:
Greg is watching TV, and Greg is eating a pizza.
This coffee is hot but it is very weak.
We could drive or we could take the bus.

Grammar in action

1 We use but to talk about contrasts (things that are different from each other). This might be when we're disappointed about a result:
We played quite well, but we lost six-one.
I trained for six weeks, but I still finished last.

2 We often use or when we make offers and suggestions:
Would you like tea or coffee?
Shall we have a pizza or a curry or something?

3 We use a comma with and to connect ideas together in a list. This might be a shopping list:
I've bought balloons, paper cups and plates.
We need sugar, bread and coffee.

A Talking about contrasts

Maggie is emailing her friend Linda. Put '/' in the four places where the word but is missing.

Hi Linda,
I've just got back from Scotland. It was fun, / it was also very tiring! It rained every day, of course, the mountains were beautiful. We camped in the Highlands near Inverness. The kids loved the campsite, it was pretty cold at night! We bought most of our food at the campsite shop. It took a long time to get our meals ready in the evening, they tasted delicious. After dinner the kids played games, and I read my book. I'm sure we'll return to the campsite one day, next time we'll go in August, not April! Best wishes, Maggie
B Making offers and suggestions

Dave and Sheila are at home on Friday night, talking about the weekend. Add these phrases to their conversation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>or a TV</th>
<th>or a cup</th>
<th>or read a</th>
<th>or any sugar</th>
<th>or a quiz</th>
<th>or we could</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

DAVE What shall we do tomorrow? We could go for a walk, ___ or we could ___ see a film.

SHEILA I don't know, Dave. I'm tired. Do you want a cup of tea ___ of coffee or something?

DAVE We haven't got any milk ___ left.

SHEILA Perhaps we should go shopping tomorrow.

DAVE OK. Have we got a newspaper ___ guide? I'll see what's on the telly.

SHEILA I've looked already. Apart from the soap operas, there's a war film, a nature programme ___ show.

DAVE Is that all? I think I'll have a bath ___ book or something.

C Connecting ideas and talking about contrasts (1)

Read this short article from a magazine, and add the words in brackets, in order, in the correct place in the lines.

Our kids need to eat healthy food, ___ we know they often prefer burgers, pizzas ___ chips. Experts say that we should all - kids adults - eat five portions of fruit vegetables every day, if we can. This may be a good idea, what do we do when our kids say 'no'? That's the question. You can give your kid a piece of fruit - a banana or an apple a pear - to take to school, you won't be there at lunchtime! Last week I put an apple in my son's lunch box every day, he took it to school, then he brought it home again, and ___ said, 'I wasn't hungry, Mum.' If you've got any good ideas, write to me email me!

D Connecting ideas and talking about contrasts (2)

Mike has invited his boss, Paul, to dinner. Add and, but, or to the conversation.

MIKE Paul, this is my wife Daniela, and ___ these are my sons, Reece ___ Oliver.

PAUL Pleased to meet you, Daniela. We've spoken on the phone, ___ we've never actually met, have we?

DANIELA No, that's right. Would you like another coffee, ___ a glass of cola?

PAUL I'll just take some water, please.

MIKE Reece is a dentist, Paul, ___ Oliver is a teacher.

OLIVER Yes, normally I teach Spanish, ___ at the moment I'm also teaching maths, because the maths teacher is ill!

MIKE Oliver went to Madrid, ___ stayed with Daniela's brother for six months when he was twelve. It was a great experience for you, wasn't it, Oliver?

OLIVER Fantastic! I learnt Spanish, ___ I learnt how to cook paella!

MIKE Well, I'll go ___ look at the food. I hope you're ready for Oliver's paella!
7 Because
We use the conjunction because to give the reason for something:
We didn't walk very far because...
Reason ➔ ... it was raining.
I went to bed because I was feeling ill.

We sometimes put because at the beginning of a sentence:
Because the shops were really busy, we didn't stay long in town.

8 So
We use the conjunction so to talk about the result of something:
I've got exams next week, ...
Result ➔ ... so I don't have much free time.
I don't have any money, so I can't go on holiday.

9 We use a comma when we put because at the beginning of a sentence:
Because we left late, we missed the last train.
And we often use a comma before so:
I've got to get up early tomorrow, so I think I'll go home now.

Grammar in action
4 We use the conjunctions because and so to say why we do things:
I gave her some flowers because she helped me at work.
The programme wasn't very interesting, so I didn't watch the end.

E Saying why we do things
Max is telling his friends about his strange night. Add because or so to the sentences. (In one sentence, you will need to use a capital letter.)

I went downstairs because I heard a noise in the kitchen at about 3 a.m. There was nothing in the kitchen, 1 I went back to bed. An hour later, I heard a second noise, 2 I went downstairs again. This time I put all the lights on 3 I was sure there was something in the house. But for the second time, I couldn't see anything, 4 I went upstairs again. 5 I was afraid after the two noises, I didn't switch the lights off. When I got back to my bedroom, I looked at my clock. It was past four, 6 I tried to go to sleep again. Suddenly, something jumped onto my bed - it was my neighbour's big, black cat!

F Working in a clothes shop
Mickey works in a clothes shop and studies at college in the evenings. He's talking to his boss, Sara. Add the following sentence endings to their conversation:

I'm sure we'll sell lots of them. Her mother is ill. We'll close the shop for tonight.
I hope you can work both days, Mickey. I need to work in the library on Thursday.
I could work on Sunday afternoon. You could leave early then. I'm going to a wedding.

SARA I think we're going to be busy this weekend, so

I hope you can work both days, Mickey. 0

MICKEY Oh dear. I can't work on Saturday. I'm afraid, because

SARA Well, what about Sunday?

MICKEY The wedding is in Wales, and I'm coming back on Sunday morning, so

0 1 2
All right, you know that Millie is away next week, don't you? She's going to Cornwall because... Can you work every day?

I'm not sure. I've got an exam at college on Friday evening, so...

Well, my son Phil is going to work in the shop on Thursday afternoon, so...

OK, that's fine. By the way, the new shirts for men arrived this morning, and I put them in the window because...

Good idea. Anyway, our last customer has just left, so... I'll see you on Sunday. Take it easy at the wedding. I need you here next week!

G A job interview

We use and, but, or, because and so to connect ideas together. Janice Copland wants to leave her uncle's business in Bristol, and find a new job. This is her first interview - with Sally Prescott and Joseph Mifsud's company. Add the correct conjunctions.

Are you ready, Miss Copland? Good. Now, why have you applied for this job?

Well, I wrote to you because your company is the most successful in the south west of England at the moment.

We're doing quite well, Miss Copland, but now we want to go because we need new staff.

Joseph's right. We want new business, (because/so) we need new staff.

We know you like the company, Miss Copland, (because/so) why did you apply for this particular job?

I've come here today because I believe that I have the experience that you're looking for.

I'm sure you've got the experience, Miss Copland, (and/so) you haven't got any qualifications in business management, have you?

That's correct. I left school at eighteen (and/because) I joined my uncle's company. He offered me a fantastic job, (but) I said 'yes'.

Well, we both agree that you've done very well in the family business. Why do you want to leave? We can't offer you more money, you know.

I'm not looking for more money (because/so) a bigger car. I applied for this job (because/so) I need a new challenge.

All right, Miss Copland. In the next part of the interview, we're going to ask you to look at a problem we've got, (and/because/so) then give us some of your ideas. Is that OK?

OVER TO YOU Now go to page 126.
01 **Be: Present simple**

You are going to stay with a family in England; write an email to introduce yourself. See how much you can say about each member of your family or about your friends.

- Talk about yourself and your family, jobs and where you're from.
- Ask questions about the family you're going to stay with.

02 **Present simple**

Look at these notes:

**FACTS:**
1. Bath/south England  
2. English & French

**REGULAR ACTIVITIES:**
1. Football/at the weekend  
2. Cinema/on Mondays  
3. Chinese food/often

**LIKES/DISLIKES:**
1. ✔ French films  
2. ✔ Holidays/hot countries  
3. ✗ Politics

Now complete this short profile by adding these verbs: eat, play, don't like, come, love, speak, go.

I __________________ came from Bath in the south of England. I ________________ English and one or two words of French. I __________________ football at the weekend with my friends, and I normally __________________ to the cinema on Mondays. I often __________________ Chinese food at our local Chinese restaurant. I __________________ French films and holidays in hot countries, but I __________________ politics!

Check your answers, and then write notes and a short profile of yourself (I come from... etc.) AND one other person you know well (My friend Carlos comes from...)

03 **Present continuous**

We use the present continuous on the phone to say what we’re doing, and what our friends family are doing, now and around now.

Try writing the beginning of a phone conversation between two friends. Try to use at least four examples of the present continuous. Before you start, look at the conversations in unit 3 (exercises A, E, and G), and, with a highlight pen or a pencil, mark examples of language that may be useful to you (e.g. beginnings 'Sally? It's Mandy here' and questions 'What about you?', 'Is Clare in?' etc.)

04 **Present simple and present continuous**

Write an introductory email to a new penfriend in England.

- Tell him/her some facts about yourself ('I come from Madrid' etc.)
- Tell him/her about some of your regular activities ('I go to the gym on Fridays' etc.)
- Tell him/her about some of the things in your life that are temporary/different from normal ('I'm learning Japanese at the moment'; 'I'm studying for an exam this month' etc.)
- Tell him/her about some of the things you like and don't like ('I love shopping' etc.)

05 **Present simple and present continuous questions**

Imagine you're spending two weeks in London. On your first day, you go to a central London tourist office. Write down six questions you would like to ask. (e.g. When does Buckingham Palace open in the morning?)

Go to www.visitlondon.com for some ideas, and look at Exercise B for some useful question forms.
06 Past simple

1 Describe what you did (and didn't do) last weekend, e.g. I got up early on Saturday morning, but I didn't do very much. In the afternoon, I... or describe a holiday or trip, e.g. In 2005, I visited my brother in America. First, I flew to Seattle. Then my brother and I travelled together to California...

2 Write some questions for an interview with a writer about his/her early life e.g. Where were you born? Did you write stories at school?

07 Past continuous

Choose a day from the last two weeks. Describe what you did, using the past continuous form at least three times. Look at the examples in exercise F.

08 Present perfect

Use the present perfect to write down:
• three things that you have done today
• three things you've never done in your life
• three things that have happened this week in your country
• three questions to ask your favourite actor about things they have done in their life.

09 Past simple and present perfect

Imagine you are studying English in London. 'Coffee Time,' your local coffee shop, is looking for a Saturday assistant to make coffee, to wash up and to clean tables.

Write a short letter saying why you would be a good person for the job. Use the past simple and the present perfect to talk about yourself and the past e.g. I've studied English for six years... I've never worked in a coffee shop, but I was a waiter in a restaurant in Italy last summer...'

Begin your letter 'I'm interested in becoming a Saturday assistant at 'Coffee Time.' You may find it helpful to look at the letter Keiko wrote in exercise B on page 35.

10 The future with going to

In an email, tell one of your friends what you and your family are going to do this weekend. As well as I'm going to, try to use one or two of the other forms: She's going to, my brother's going to, we're going to, Peter isn't going to, they aren't going to etc. At the end of the email, use going to to ask your friend one or two questions about his/her plans.

11 The future with will and shall

Imagine that two friends are on the phone. They want to go out this evening. Write out their conversation as a dialogue.
• Use shall we/I to make suggestions (e.g. Shall we go to the cinema?)
• Use will for offers (e.g. When does the film start? ~ I'll phone the cinema.) and for saying what we think about the future (e.g. I think the new film with Kiefer Sutherland will be good.)
• Look through the exercises in unit 11, and use some of the language!

12 Questions

A questionnaire is a list of questions we ask people to find out about their lives, work, study, free time, routines etc. Make a list of questions that you could ask people in your town or city centre, using What, Where, How, and When. Here are some examples:

What: What sort of books do you like?
How: How often do you play sports?
Where: Where are you going this morning?
When: When do you normally get up?
**CAMP CANADA**

25 July - 31 August

Can you swim? Can you play sports? Can you sing and dance? Can you help young people to learn new skills in the countryside? If the answer is 'yes', we can offer you a job. We can't pay you very much, but we can give you a very interesting time this summer.

CAMP CANADA organises an international camp for teenagers at Lake Superior every summer. We're looking for Student Assistants.

Write to Dave Spurling at PO Box 56, Toronto, Canada, and tell us what you can do.

Write a short letter of application, starting with the sentence, 'I would like to apply for the post of Student Assistant.' Answer the questions in the advertisement. If you can't do something, say so; for example: 'I can't dance, but I can play the guitar.' Talk about other useful skills that you have, for example: 'I can also drive.'

Use can/can't to say in the letter that you are not free to work in July, 'because I need to finish a university project.' Ask if you can start on 1 August, and offer to work an extra week at the end of the camp 'if you need me.'

**14 Could, was able to, managed to**

1. You're going to spend five days in a business hotel in London. Write a list of at least five polite requests you could make on the phone from your room, or in different parts of the hotel. Think about: using 'room service' (e.g. ordering a meal in your room, or getting an alarm call); using one of the restaurants or the gym/swimming pool; using the business centre; getting a taxi etc.

2. It's Thursday evening. Write an email to a friend. Make some suggestions about things you could do together at the weekend. Look at Exercise B for an example.

**15 Should**

An English friend, Holly, is going to spend two weeks in your country. It's her first visit. She wants to see as much as possible.

Write an email to Holly, using should to give her some advice on what to do. The second email in Exercise E may help you.

**16 Must and have to**

1. Write three sentences starting 'You must...' to describe some of the things a tourist must do, when visiting your country (e.g. 'You must spend a few days in Scotland, because it's a beautiful country.')

2. Write three or four sentences about the things you have to and don't have to do every week at home or at work (e.g. 'I have to cook dinner on Friday evenings, but I don't have to wash up...')

**17 The imperative**

Look at this information for students visiting London:

- Visit the big museums - they're normally free.
- Take a boat trip on the Thames. You'll get some great views of London!
- Don't take taxis everywhere, because they're expensive.

Now write a list of at least six imperative points to help students from England visiting the capital city of your country.

124 | Over to you
18 Have got and have; make, do, and get

1 Use have got to write six sentences: two sentences about the things you possess (e.g. I've got a new computer); two sentences about your family (e.g. I've got two brothers); and two sentences about what you or your family members look like (e.g. I've got black hair.)

2 Use make, do, have and get to write three sentences about the things you, your family and friends do regularly (e.g. My brother sometimes does the washing-up); and three sentences about the things they're doing at the moment (e.g. My dad is making dinner.)

19 Verb + infinitive

Imagine you’re writing a blog on a Saturday morning. You can write about:

- your efforts last week (e.g. ’I tried to go to the gym on Monday, but I got up too late.’)
- your hopes and plans (e.g. ’I’m planning to visit Brazil in the summer.’)
- the things people do for us (e.g. ’Sara offered to buy me dinner.’)
- your opinions (e.g. ’It’s difficult to learn a new language in the evening’)
- your feelings (e.g. ’On Friday, I was surprised to get an email from my American friend, Stu.’)

20 Articles and nouns

1 Write a very short story (true or untrue). Exercise B may help you.

2 Look at Exercise F. Imagine you are Juan and describe your visit to Borough Market. Start your description with the sentence, ’We went to Borough Market yesterday.’

21 There is, there are; this, that, these, and those

It’s Friday evening. Write a short email to a friend, making plans for the weekend. Use there + be (e.g. ’There’s a good film at the cinema...’) and this/that (e.g. ’I liked that restaurant on George Street. Shall we go there again?’)

22 Countable and uncountable nouns

Write out a phone message that you might leave with your husband/wife/friend, saying what you need from the supermarket. Use the phrases: ’We need some/a/an/a lot of/two etc...’ and ’We haven’t got much/many/any...’ with countable and uncountable food and drink words.

23 Pronouns and possessives

Write an email to a new English friend. Talk about:

- the weather where you are.
- yourself, your friends and/or your family
- something that belongs to you or someone else

Try to use at least two object pronouns (me, you, him etc.), two possessive determiners (my, your, his etc.), and one possessive pronoun (mine, yours, his etc.)

24 Possessives (2)

Write an email to an English-speaking friend, telling him/her what you, your friends and/or family members are doing at the moment. You may find the language in exercises D and F useful.

Try to use ’s two times, a phrase like a friend of mine once, and ’s once (if you can.)

25 Adjectives

Imagine you’re on holiday. Write a postcard to an English friend, describing your hotel and the town where you’re staying. Try using different types of adjectives. Make sure you put two adjectives before a noun at least twice in your postcard!

26 Comparative and superlative adjectives

1 Write a very short text (two or three sentences), comparing two towns/cities in your country. Use three or four comparative adjectives. Exercise B may be helpful.

2 Write a second very short text about a great holiday place in your country. Use two or three superlative adjectives. Exercise D may be helpful.
27 Adverbs of manner

1 Write a short list of the things you do/can do well, the things you do/can do quite well, and the things you don't do/can't do very well (e.g. sports, hobbies, cooking, languages).

2 Use adverbs to write about four people that you know (e.g. My friend Steve plays music very loudly).

28 Adverbs of degree

Use adverbs of degree (including quite before a/an + adjective + noun, and with a lot of; and really and quite with verbs) to write about your job, or your life at school, or college/university (e.g. I'm working very hard at the moment, because we have exams next month. My teachers give me quite a lot of homework…)

It may be useful to look at Exercise E.

29 Prepositions

Imagine you're working in an office in London. Write a short email to a colleague. Explain that you want to see him/her, but you can't meet today, because you are the only person in your office. Say where your colleagues are, e.g. Julie is in Spain at our Madrid office. Then try to fix a meeting for tomorrow, e.g. I'm in a meeting from nine to eleven, but could we meet at 11.30? You may find exercises A and E useful.

30 Conjunctions

First, look at this job ad on the internet:

'The Shakespeare Academy is a language school in Stratford-upon-Avon. We're looking for an assistant for our multinational Summer School. The successful person will organise weekend trips to different parts of the UK, and help our students with their problems. If you are interested, email us. Tell us why you are applying for this job. Describe your education and skills. Tell us about any other jobs you've had. If we like your message, we'll ask you to come for an interview in April. Email Karen Brown at info@shakespeareacademy.com'

Now write the email, using the conjunctions and, but, or, because and so.
Form tables

A  Plural nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>cars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>mistakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photo</td>
<td>photos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ -es</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glass</td>
<td>glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
<td>wishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beach</td>
<td>beaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-f/fe → -ves</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>life</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but roof</td>
<td>roofs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ies</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>story</td>
<td>stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family</td>
<td>families</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular nouns:
- man: men
- person: people
- child: children

B  Present simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/YOU/WE/THEY</th>
<th>HE/SHE/IT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>writes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>says</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| + -es         |          |
| pass          | passes   |
| finish        | finishes |
| teach         | teaches  |
| do            | does     |
| mix           | mixes    |

| -y → -ies     |          |
| try           | tries    |
| marry         | marries  |
| fly           | flies     |

*Consonants
b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z
Vowels
a e i o u

Syllables
|mono| 1 syllable
|bi| 2 syllables
|tri| 3 syllables

Form tables | 127
### C -ing forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>-ING FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>+ -ing</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With most verbs, we add -ing:</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-e + -ing</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With verbs that end with a consonant* + -e, we delete the -e and add -ing:</td>
<td>make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ie → -ying</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With verbs that end with -ie, we change -ie to -ying:</td>
<td>lie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-t → -ting</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With verbs that end with one vowel* + one consonant (e.g. get, hit, stop), we double the consonant:</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>+ -ing</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But note that we do not double the consonant, 1) when it is y or w (e.g. play)</td>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) when the last syllable* is not stressed (e.g. reMEMber, VISit):</td>
<td>happen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>listen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>remember</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D Regular verbs: Past simple and past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST SIMPLE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>+ -ed</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With most verbs we add -ed:</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td>cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>+ -d</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With verbs ending with -e, we add -d:</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>lived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>close</td>
<td>closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-y → -ied</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With verbs that end with one consonant* + -y, we change the y to -ied:</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>carry</td>
<td>carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>try</td>
<td>tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-p → -pped</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With verbs that end with one vowel* + one consonant (e.g. stop), we double the consonant:</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td>stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>+ -ed</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But note that we do not double the consonant, 1) when it is y or w (e.g. play)</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>stayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) when the last syllable* is not stressed (e.g. LISTen, HAPpen, OPEN):</td>
<td>happen</td>
<td>happened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note that in British English I is usually doubled, even if the syllable in unstressed (e.g. travel)</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>visit</td>
<td>visited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cancel</td>
<td>cancelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>travelled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Irregular verbs: Past simple and past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST SIMPLE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was / were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown / showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### F Comparative and superlative adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -er/-est</td>
<td>We add -er/-est to short adjectives (one-syllable* adjectives):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warm</td>
<td>warmer</td>
<td>the warmest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall</td>
<td>taller</td>
<td>the tallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>younger</td>
<td>the youngest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ -r/-st</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We add -r/-st to adjectives that end with -e:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>the latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ -g → -gger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>the biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>the hottest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>wetter</td>
<td>the wettest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-w + -er/-est</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>the lowest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more/most</td>
<td>We use more/the most before adjectives of two or more syllables*:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>more expensive</td>
<td>the most expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>more famous</td>
<td>the most famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>more beautiful</td>
<td>the most beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-y → -ier/-iest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happier</td>
<td>the happiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>luckier</td>
<td>the luckiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easier</td>
<td>the easiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Irregular adjectives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>the best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>the worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>farther</td>
<td>the farthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Consonants:

b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z

Vowels:

a e i o u

Syllables:

\[ \text{hit} = 1 \text{ syllable} \]
\[ \text{vise} = 2 \text{ syllables} \]
\[ \text{member} = 3 \text{ syllables} \]

### G Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -ly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With most adverbs, we add -ly to the adjective:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>correctly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceptions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives that end with -y (y → -ily):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>luckily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives that end with -ble (e + y):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remarkable</td>
<td>remarkably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular adverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Verb tenses

**infinitive:** to start

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>POSITIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>NEGATIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / you / we / they</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>do not start</td>
<td>Do I start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he / she / it</td>
<td>starts</td>
<td>does not start</td>
<td>Does he start?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present continuous</th>
<th>POSITIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>NEGATIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am starting</td>
<td>am not starting</td>
<td>Am I starting?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(I'm starting)</td>
<td>(I'm not starting)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you / we / they</td>
<td>are starting</td>
<td>are not starting</td>
<td>Are you starting?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(we're starting)</td>
<td>('re not / aren't starting)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he / she / it</td>
<td>is starting</td>
<td>is not starting</td>
<td>Is she starting?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(it's starting)</td>
<td>('s not / isn't starting)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>POSITIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>NEGATIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / you / he / she / it / we / they</td>
<td>started</td>
<td>did not start</td>
<td>Did you start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(didn't start)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>POSITIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>NEGATIVE full forms (short forms)</th>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / you / we / they</td>
<td>have started</td>
<td>have not started</td>
<td>Have they started?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(I've started)</td>
<td>(haven't started)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he / she / it</td>
<td>has started</td>
<td>has not started</td>
<td>Has she started?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(he's started)</td>
<td>(hasn't started)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
01 **Be: Present simple**

**A(i)**
1. 'm
2. 's
3. 's not/isn't
4. 's
5. are
6. are
7. 're
8. 's
9. 's
10. 'm not

(ii)
1. I'm a student. / They're both teachers.
2. My father's from Brazil. / She's Irish.
3. Paul and Simon are my brothers.

**B**
1. is
2. 's
3. 's
4. 4 're
5. 5 're
6. 6 're
7. 7 'm
8. 8 're
9. 9 's
10. 10 sunny
11. 11 south
12. 12 're
13. sea
14. 14 're not/aren't
15. 15 is

**C**
1. 1 's
2. 2 is
3. 3 near
4. 4 's
5. 5 's not/isn't
6. 6 cold
7. 7 sea
8. 8 's not/isn't
9. 9 's
10. 10 sunny
11. 11 south
12. 12 're

**D**
1. Are you a student here? Yes, I am.
2. What's your name? It's Ming Yifeng.
3. How old are you? I'm twenty two.
4. Are you from Hong Kong? No, I'm from Shanghai.
5. Where is your ID card, please? Here it is.
6. What's your address in the UK? It's The Hyde Park Hotel, Queensway, London W2 3BJ.
7. Is this your first day here, too? Are you from? Am I in the correct classroom? Is this the bus to Queensway? Is the Hyde Park Hotel, please? is breakfast tomorrow morning?

**E**
1. Are you 5 It's 9 You're
2. It's 6 it isn't 10 I'm not
3. I'm 7 this is 11 I'm
4. are you 8 we're 12 it's

02 **Present simple**

**A**
1. drive
2. has
3. fixes
4. lives
5. come
6. speaks
7. make
8. sleeps
9. teaches

**B(i)**
1. go
2. have
3. start
4. arrives
5. finishes
6. fly
7. gives
8. do
9. try

(ii)
1. goes
2. has
3. starts
4. flies
5. does
6. tries
7. spends
8. play

**C**
1. work
2. spends
3. speak
4. plays
5. work
6. speak
7. spends
8. play

**D**
1. hate
2. don't think
3. doesn't like
4. doesn't understand
5. don't know
6. know
7. love
8. don't like
9. want

**E (i)**
1. don't doesn't
2. 2 6 meets meet
3. have has
4. go goes
5. 5
6. understand
7. 7 don't speak
8. 8 8

(ii)
1. don't eat
2. love
3. think (or understand)
4. studies
5. understand
6. don't speak
7. don't meet
8. takes
### Present continuous

| A | 1 | 'm sitting | 4 | 'm thinking | 7 | splashing |
|   | 2 | 's/is shining | 5 | 're having | 8 | 's/is running |
|   | 3 | 're enjoying | 6 | 's/is swimming | 9 | 's playing |
| B | 1 | 're walking | 3 | 's splashing | 5 | 're standing |
|   | 2 | 's/is sinking | 4 | 's/is shouting |
| C | 1 | 's/is arriving | 5 | 's/is giving |
|   | 2 | 's/is stopping | 6 | 's smiling |
|   | 3 | 's/is getting out | 7 | 's talking |
|   | 4 | 's wearing | 8 | is coming |
| D | 1 | Dave, I think the owner is looking at you. |
|   | 2 | Yes. She's walking towards us now |
|   | 3 | Hello. My husband and I are having a cup of coffee on the deck. |
|   | 4 | it's getting late. |
| E | 1 | She isn't/’s not staying |
|   | 2 | her sister’s/is moving |
|   | 3 | Galina’s/is helping |
|   | 4 | I'm not working |
|   | 5 | I'm learning |
|   | 6 | You're learning |
|   | 7 | I'm writing |
|   | 8 | We aren't/'re not living |
|   | 9 | they aren't/'re not playing |
|   | 10 | Alexander's/is studying |
|   | 11 | Fedor's/is teaching |
| F | 1 | enjoying | 4 | buying | 7 | having |
|   | 2 | getting | 5 | eating |
|   | 3 | staying | 6 | living |
| G | 1 | 'm watching | 8 | isn’t/’s not spending |
|   | 2 | are spending | 9 | ’s meeting |
|   | 3 | ’m looking | 10 | ‘s playing |
|   | 4 | ’s/is eating | 11 | ’re driving |
|   | 5 | ’s/is playing | 12 | ’re working |
|   | 6 | ’s visiting | 13 | ’m thinking |
|   | 7 | ’re eating | 14 | ’re looking |

### Present simple and present continuous

| A | 1 | I normally work |
|   | 2 | I'm visiting |
|   | 3 | I live |
|   | 4 | I'm staying |
|   | 5 | I usually drive |
|   | 6 | I'm walking |
|   | 7 | My English is improving |
| B(i) | 1 | I speak |
|   | 2 | I’m studying |
|   | 3 | I’m doing |
|   | 4 | My dad works |
|   | 5 | I’m studying |
|   | 6 | I play |
| (ii) | 1 | The sun’s/is shining |
|   | 2 | I go to |
|   | 3 | I do |
|   | 4 | Khan comes |
|   | 5 | he’s studying |
| C | 1 | ’s walking |
|   | 2 | ’s wearing |
|   | 3 | ’s singing |
|   | 4 | ’s falling |
|   | 5 | comes |
|   | 6 | has |
|   | 7 | watches |
|   | 8 | goes |
|   | 9 | isn’t/’s not eating |
|   | 10 | ’s dancing |

**WORD FOCUS**

1. violin
2. piano
3. trumpet

---

**Answers**

- **Diana** (the = 0) Hello, my name’s Diana. I’m studying here at 0 moment.
- **Julie** (every = 1) Hi! I’m Julie. I come to these concerts 1 week. What instrument do you play?
- **Diana** (this = 2) Well, I normally play the violin, but I’m learning to play the trumpet 2 year, too.
- **Julie** I love violin music. But the trumpet is a difficult instrument, isn’t it?
- **Diana** (on = 3) Yes! I have a class 3 Tuesdays. It isn’t easy. What about you? Do you play anything?
- **Julie** (is = 4) Not really. My husband 4 teaching me the piano at the moment. He plays every day.
- **Diana** It’s not easy to find the time, is it?
- **Julie** (these = 5) We’re all working very 5 hard days. Too hard. But these concerts after work are great.
- **Diana** (have = 6) Good. We sometimes 6 concerts at lunchtime, too.
- **Julie** Lunchtime! What’s that?
- **Diana** (at = 7) Oh dear! You’re working much too hard 7 the moment!
05 Present simple and present continuous questions

A
1. Do you like the local shops?
2. Do you play sports in Madrid?
3. Do you have a map of Madrid?
4. Do metro tickets cost a lot of money?
5. When does college start?
6. Do you cook Spanish food?
7. Does the college library open at the weekend?
8. Does the local bank change money?
9. Do the local restaurants cook traditional food?
10. How much does the cinema cost?

B
1. How do we find Dublin Castle?
2. Does / Is it open on Sundays?
3. When does / is the National Gallery open?
4. Does the train go to Dublin Bay?
5. How much does the train cost?

C
1. Do you want some more water?
2. Do you want some cheesecake?
3. Does he want a banana split?
4. Do we want coffee afterwards?
5. Do you want some more orange juice?

D
1. What is she doing?
2. Is he cooking in the kitchen?
3. What are you listening to?
4. Are we leaving now, Joe?
5. Is Cova resting upstairs?
6. Are you coming downstairs?

06 Past simple

A
1. they stayed 5. it was 9. we watched
2. We talked 6. I went 10. They lost
3. we saw 7. I met 11. I took
4. we ate 8. we did

B
1. was 5. cooked 9. took
2. found 6. read 10. left

C
1. wore 5. spent 9. lost
2. drank 6. sold 10. married
3. caught 7. woke 11. stayed
4. bought 8. enjoyed

D
1. I didn’t do anything
2. Did you see Jenny
3. she wasn’t at home
4. Was she OK
5. she didn’t talk very much
6. Did you invite her to our party
7. What did you do all afternoon,
8. Did you make a wonderful dinner
9. When did they leave
10. I didn’t get any milk this morning.

WORD FOCUS  A lock  B feed  C check
07 Past continuous

A 1 were dancing 4 was working
   2 was eating 5 was sleeping
   3 wasn’t/ wasn’t playing

B 1 Where were you going?
   2 We were meeting an old friend.
   3 Lorna was sleeping.
   4 But she wasn’t/ was not ringing from Moscow.
   5 What was Svetlana doing in London?
   6 No, she wasn’t/ was not working.
   7 I think she was joking.

C 1 Were you walking home?
   2 I wasn’t going home.
   3 What was he doing?
   4 Was he jogging?
   5 he wasn’t running.
   6 was he walking?
   7 he wasn’t walking
   8 Was he sleeping?
   9 He wasn’t sleeping.
   10 What was he wearing?

D 1 I hope you’ve had a better day than me! It 0
raining hard when I got up, so I didn’t go jogging. Then, 1
I was having breakfast, my boss phoned…. I was writing the
first sentence when Mike 2 on my door, and said he was
feeling really ill. So I 3 downstairs again and phoned for the
doctor, and while we were 4 for her, Mum arrived and said,
‘If you’re not doing anything this weekend, perhaps you’d
like to help me. I’m painting the kitchen.’
Thanks for your message. … I 5 buying a new CD in town 6
I saw a really good TV for £150, so I bought it for the flat. …. While I 7 waiting in the queue for my cappuccino, I 8 Julie
and she invited me to her party tonight! … He 9 looking for
a flat, when his brother got a job in America. …

08 Present perfect

A 1 ‘s sent 4 ‘s travelled 7 ‘s been
   2 ‘ve lived 5 have met 8 ‘s made
   3 ‘s spent 6 ‘s done

B 1 The kids have seen
   2 She’s taken
   3 she’s lost
   4 He’s just been
   5 I’ve done
   6 I’ve written
   7 I’ve spoken
   8 Vincent’s just paid
   9 Josie and Stella have run

C 1 ‘s broken 4 ‘s travelled 7 ‘ve written
   2 ‘s left 5 ‘s won
   3 ‘s gone 6 ‘ve started

D 1 Steve hasn’t emailed his new photos
   2 I haven’t done my homework.
   3 Have you eaten?
   4 Have you talked to Luke?
   5 He hasn’t finished work.
   6 Have you ever seen it?
   7 Has Steve spoken to you about a holiday in Greece?
   8 I’ve never been to Greece.
   9 Have you seen any photos of the house?
   10 Steve hasn’t been there.

E 1 d 3 a 5 c
   2 f 4 b

F(i) 1 never 3 made 5 ever
    2 been 4 returned 6 have

(ii) (3) … to your message. Diana isn’t at home because she’s
been to London. Mum is ill, I’m afraid. We tried to phone
you lots of times. Has you lost your mobile again? Ring me
back.
(4) Good afternoon, Mr Daw. This is Brian Hart from the
Country Kitchen. We haven’t make a mistake, I’m afraid.
Someone used your card and your name on 17 December. I
am just spoken to our manager, Greg Turner…

1 gone 3 made
2 Have 4 have /’ve
**09 Past simple and present perfect**

**A**
1. I phoned Clare
2. She's lost
3. Her husband gave what did you do
4. I met
5. I've had a cold

**B**
1. I've worked 4 sold 7 passed
2. spent 5 've lived 8 've used
3. was 6 've started

**C**
1. Have you spent 7 I went
2. I lived 8 I travelled
3. My parents returned 9 Did you go
4. I haven't worked 10 we stayed
5. Have you visited 11 have you talked
6. I've been

**D**
1. has-sold sold
2. bought has bought
3. has-visited visited
4. returned has returned
5. has-gone went
6. has-bought bought

**E**
1. ever 4 in 7 last
2. just 5 ago
3. never 6 in

**F**
1. 've had 7 worked
2. Did you have 8 haven't seen
3. wasn't 9 's just bought
4. showed 10 Have you ever been
5. drove 11 went
6. 've never seen 12 haven't been

**10 The future with going to**

**A**
1. I'm going to have a swim
2. I'm going to get
3. You aren't going to buy an English paper
4. Jamie and I are going to spend the morning
5. Lily and I are going to do some shopping
6. I'm going to go cycling
7. What are you going to do
8. I'm not going to go cycling

**B**
1. I'm going to put some old suitcases
2. I'm going to tidy my clothes
3. I'm going to wash the bath
4. I'm going to clean the windows
5. I'm going to vacuum the carpet
6. I'm going to cut the grass

**C**
1. I'm not going to work
2. I'm going to go
3. I'm going to spend
4. Are you going to have
5. Abigail and I are going to find
6. what are you going to do
7. Abigail is going to stay
8. I'm not going to look
9. We’re going to teach

**D**
1. Careful! The traffic lights are going to change.
2. The old man is going to win again.
3. It's going to be a hot afternoon.
4. Are you going to have an ice cream?
5. She's going to break her leg!

**E**
1. I'm going to work
2. I'm going to meet
3. I'm not going to do
4. I'm going to get up
5. Are you going to go
6. We're going to cook
7. Lucy is going to spend
8. he's going to say

**F**
My brother Luke and I have got plans, of course, for the New Year. First, we're both going to learn Chinese, because China is now the most important country in the world. In fact, I'm going to fly to Beijing, if I can find the money. Luke is going to visit Mr Xu at our local Chinese restaurant, Hot Wok, to get some information about China etc. Next, we're going to paint our bedroom. The walls are going to be green and red, and the ceiling is going to be dark blue with stars, like the sky at night. Luke is going to talk to Dad about this. Finally, I'm going to do better at school. I'm not going to work harder, because I work hard enough already - I'm going to use a new system, called the 'System of Seven': I'm going to learn seven new things every day, and write them down in a special book. Are you going to do anything interesting this year? Send me an email.
11 The future with will and shall

A 1 I think it will last about an hour.
   2 You’ll finish at twelve.
   3 It won’t be busy at that time, Lauren.
   4 Do you think they’ll ask me about my year in Africa?
   5 I’m sure you’ll do well.
   6 When will you get the result?
   7 They’ll tell me at the end of the interview.

B 1 I’ll open
   2 we’ll drive
   3 I’ll have a glass
   4 we’ll have a bottle
   5 I’ll bring
   6 Adam will fix it
   7 I’ll order

C I’m so sorry to hear about the flood in Gloucester, and to see the photo of your house. They say the weather / get better on Thursday and Friday. I hope so, but life / be difficult for you in the next few days. I saw the Prime Minister on TV in Gloucester yesterday, but / you get any help from the government? They need to spend more money. I’m sure we / see more floods in the UK in the future. Anyway, I listened to the news this morning. The roads near you / be OK at the weekend, so Tom and I / come over on Saturday morning. We / help you to clean your floors, and Tom / buy us all some fish and chips on Saturday night!

D 1 Shall we have
   2 Shall we park
   3 Shall we take
   4 Shall I drive
   5 ‘ll / will
   6 Shall
   7 ‘ll / will
   8 Will
   9 ‘ll / will
   10 Shall
   11 ‘ll / will
   12 Shall

E 1 I’ll / will
   2 ‘ll / will
   3 will
   4 Shall
   5 ‘ll / will
   6 Shall
   7 ‘ll / will
   8 ‘ll / will
   9 ‘ll / will
   10 Shall
   11 ‘ll / will
   12 Shall

F 1 shall we do
   2 I’ll / will be
   3 Will you see
   4 Shall I ask
   5 I’ll / will see
   6 Shall we see
   7 ‘CIA Blues’ will be
   8 Santiago won’t be
   9 I’ll / will call
   10 he’ll / will stay
   11 Shall I bring

12 Questions

A 1 Why are
   2 How are
   3 How do
   4 How did
   5 Why are
   6 Why do

B 1 When do the classes begin in the morning?
   2 When did you get up this morning?
   3 Where am I going to sleep?
   4 Have you slept in a tepee before?
   5 where is the bathroom?
   6 Did you bring a towel with you?
   7 When will I meet the other students?
   8 Where did you leave your bag?
   9 Shall I go to my tepee now?

C 1 Are
   2 many
   3 did
   4 far
   5 going
   6 old
   7 much

D 1 Yes, it was.
   2 Yes, I am.
   3 No, he doesn’t.
   4 No, we haven’t.
   5 Yes, we are.
   6 Yes, he has.
   7 No, we won’t.
   8 Yes, I do.
   9 No, we don’t.

E 1 What is he going to buy?
   2 What do you normally buy at this market?
   3 Shall I get two small loaves?
   4 Which loaves do you want?
   5 Have you seen Isabelle, Pierre?
   6 What did she say?
   7 Whose phone is this?
   8 Who are you looking for?

F 1 How
   2 Who
   3 Where
   4 Which
   5 When
   6 Why
   7 Whose
   8 What

13 Can

WORD FOCUS 1 basketball 2 baseball
3 ice skating 4 snooker

A 1 I can make
   2 I can’t do
   3 Can you play
   4 I can’t play
   5 I can skate
   6 Can you play
   7 she can play
   8 she can speak

B 1 Can you hear the sea
   2 Can you see a kettle
   3 Can I see a lot of old newspapers
   4 Can I see any cups
   5 I can hear a noise
   6 I can’t hear anything
   7 you can smell fish
   8 you can see anything

C(i) …We could have something to eat. I / can’t see you at the weekend, because I’m going to visit my dad in Wales. He’s ninety now. He can get to the shops every day, so he always has enough to eat, but he can’t do all the jobs around the house. Anyway, email or ring me!

(ii) Thanks for your message. I can’t see you on Monday evening, because I’m flying to Sweden on business on Monday morning, but thanks for asking me. I can do something with you next weekend, though. Do you want to see a film or go for a walk? I know I’m working too hard at the moment, but I can’t stop because this is my first big project, and my boss is watching me! I hope …
D 1 I can take you       6 Can I help
2 I can make some food   7 can you bring
3 Can I do anything
4 Can you take some books
5 Can I give them

E  TRANG Good evening, sir. Can I can help you?
    JAMES Yes, I hope so. Can you I have a single room for two
          nights, please?
    TRANG Of course, sir. I can have give you a room on the
          top floor, if you like. You'll have a great view!
    JAMES That's fine, thanks.
    TRANG Can you fill in this form, please?
    JAMES Sure. Can I buy pay by credit card?
    TRANG Of course, sir. No problem. Can you I see your card
          now, please?
    JAMES Here it is. By the way, is it possible to use the
          Internet here?
    TRANG Certainly, sir. It's on the seventeenth floor. You can
          check your email there at any time, but you can
          can't send faxes after 10 p.m. Now, can I show see
          your passport, please?

F 1 Can I       4 can you       7 Can you
2 I can       5 You can't
3 Can you       6 I can't

14 Could, was able to, managed to

A 1 Could you tell us the way to the bus station, please?
2 Could we have some information about the trip to Ayers
   Rock, please?
3 Could you give us a timetable, please?
4 Could we have two return tickets for tomorrow, please?

B Thanks very much for your message. I'm glad you're
   free at the weekend. We / drive to Newquay around ten in
   the morning. It takes about four hours from my house. I /
   bring some sandwiches. We'll be hungry before we arrive. In
   the afternoon we / cycle along Watergate Bay, perhaps. It's
   beautiful there. You / take some fantastic photos with your
   new camera then, in the evening, we / eat at 'Mickey's',
   if you like, the small fish restaurant in Newquay. It's very
   popular, so I / reserve a table today. I've booked two rooms
   at the Sandy Beach Hotel, of course. My friends Dave and
   Connie stay there every summer. They love it. Then, on
   Sunday we / visit Sheila and Michael. They live in Exeter, on
   our way home. What do you think?

C 1 I could run
2 We couldn't travel
3 some English people could go
4 we could only stay
5 You couldn't change
6 you could buy

WORD FOCUS 1 mirror 2 fan 3 lamp
4 coffee table 5 rug

D 1 We were able to finish
2 We managed to book
3 I couldn't sleep
4 I managed to buy
5 I was able to buy
6 I couldn't find
7 George managed to get

E 1 managed to 4 were able to 7 could you
2 couldn't 5 managed 8 could
3 could put 6 could sleep 9 could eat

F  JAMES Hello. Could we see Jo Corrigan, please?
    NURSE I'm sorry, but you can't see her at the moment.
    JAMES Really? When my wife was in hospital in January,
          we were able to visit her all the time.
    NURSE That's right, but at the moment we don't have
          enough nurses on the ward.
    JAMES I suppose we could come back later, Kay.
    NURSE Could you come back an hour, perhaps?
    KAY But is she OK after the operation?
    NURSE Oh yes. She couldn't eat her dinner last night,
          but she managed to have some breakfast this
          morning.
    JAMES Don't worry, Kay. We could have a coffee in the
          hospital cafe. Thank you, nurse. We'll come back
          later.

15 Should

A 1 should have a holiday.
2 should talk to Uncle Jim.
3 shouldn't work all the time.
4 should all go to France for a couple of weeks.
5 shouldn't decide today.

B 1 you should think about food
2 you shouldn't eat take-aways
3 You should go to your local shops
4 you shouldn't study
5 you should make a timetable
6 you should go for a walk
7 You shouldn't go out every night
8 you should call me
16 **Must and have to**

### A

1. I must speak
2. We must do
3. I have to meet
4. We must have

### B

1. I must speak
2. We must do
3. I have to meet
4. We must have

### C

1. I must speak
2. We must do
3. I have to meet
4. We must have

### D

1. I don't have to
2. I don't have to
3. Mustn't
4. Don't have to

### E

1. Do we have to get the ticket at Waterloo?
2. Do we have to change in Paris?
3. Do we have to choose our date of return tomorrow?
4. Does he have to pay the full price?
5. Do I have to bring my own food?
6. Do we have to arrive early for our train?
7. Do we have to take our passports?

### F

1. Mustn't forget
2. Mustn't use
3. Must eat
4. Mustn't ring

---

**Answer key**

---

**WORD FOCUS**

1. Chest of drawers
2. Wardrobe
3. Sofa
4. Armchair

---

**Despina desire to stay longer in Manchester, don’t you, Sean?**

Despina: Yes. I think it’s a good idea for her. She / look for a room or a small flat.

Sean: Yes, but she doesn’t know the city very well, so / help her? *(Despina arrives home.)*

### Despina

Hi Rachel, Sean! I've found a great photography course at the university, but my mother wants me to return to Greece. What / do?

### Rachel

How long is the course, Despina?

Despina: Six months. Do you think I / find a different course in Athens?

Rachel: No, but I think you / speak to your mother today or tomorrow.

Rachel: You / tell her that your course is only six months long, Despina, and that you'll go home for Christmas!
17 The imperative

A
1 Give me your coat and gloves.
2 give her my best wishes.
3 Have a seat by the fire.
4 Help yourself to sugar and milk.
5 Look outside at the weather.
6 Try my fruitcake with your coffee.
7 Tell me all your news.

B
1 Give my love to your parents.
2 Give me a ring when you get there.
3 Have a good journey!
4 Enjoy your holiday!
5 Don't forget to email me.
6 Look after yourself.
7 Drive carefully.

C
1 spend a couple
2 turn right at
3 eat all
4 make yourself
5 see the famous
6 forget our
7 have a swim
8 relax in
9 enjoy it

D
1 Wait
2 tell
3 don't cross
4 turn
5 Don't go
6 follow
7 don't touch
8 enjoy

E
1 stay
2 be
3 Decide
4 Work
5 spend
6 go out
7 lose
8 have

F
1 Put your
2 Have a
3 Look at
4 Don't eat
5 But use
6 Don't go
7 help yourself
8 but ask
9 give Sally
10 be careful

7 don't touch
8 enjoy

11 don't burn
12 don't eat
13 put it
14 have some

18 Have got and have, make, do, and get

A
1 I've
2 she's
3 's got
4 hasn't
5 haven't
6 got

B
1 Have you got a headache?
2 Have you got any friends at this college?
3 I haven't got any friends here
4 He's got lots of DVDs
5 My parents have got a farm there
6 Have you got any brothers or sisters?

C
I'm having a sandwich, because I'm bored. Can I come over? Sunday morning is always the same in my house. Mum has a bath. Dad has a walk. Sonia and Diana have breakfast together. Then Dad comes home and has a shower. Next, Mum and Dad have a cup of tea together. Then Dad reads the papers. Then Mum, Dad, Sonia and me have lunch together. Diana doesn't have lunch with us because she goes to the gym. Anyway, what are you doing at the moment? Are you having breakfast? Do you want to go for a swim or something?

D
1 Are you having fun
2 My sister is having a bad time
3 She's having a walk
4 She's having a game
5 He's having a swim

E
1 do
2 does
3 makes
4 making
5 does
6 made
7 made
8 doing

11 don't burn
12 don't eat
13 put it
14 have some

3 makes
4 made
5 made got
6 do make
7 made did
8 got did
9 do get

G
1 's got
2 getting
3 doing
4 doing
5 making
6 've got
7 gets
8 has
9 makes
10 getting

19 Verb + infinitive

A
1 needs to write
2 planning to do
3 decided to change
4 hoping to open
5 planning to create
6 wants to open
7 need to find
8 wanted to look
9 hoping to see
20 Articles and nouns

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>an</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B ANNE Great! It's a big site, isn't it? How many people are there?
GREG Well, there are a hundred and eighty tents, so we have around six hundred people, I suppose. There's a small supermarket, and someone comes once a day to sell fresh fish.
SUE That's nice. Can we wash our clothes here?
GREG Sure. There's a washing machine in every shower house. It costs a euro a wash hour to use.
ANNE Is that a farm next to the site?
GREG That's right. You can buy apples there for two euros a kilo. We've got a little cinema as well. There's a film three times a week. Are you both students?
SUE I'm a student, but Anne is an actor.
GREG Really? Well, I'll show you where to go. Come on!

C 1 to drive 3 to marry 5 to help
2 to answer 4 to say

D 1 It's impossible to finish
2 It's easy to use the photocopier, and
3 It's hard to say that you've
4 It's interesting to visit other
5 It's crazy to go to
6 It's wrong to send an email if

E 1 I'm happy to be
2 I'm very pleased to meet
3 I'm surprised to see
4 we were sad to hear
5 he was afraid to
6 we're glad to welcome

F 1 pleased to hear 7 promise to visit
2 decided 8 I was surprised to hear
3 want 9 I'm afraid to buy
4 offered to 10 My parents have refused to give
5 difficult to 11 I hope to hear
6 trying

21 There is, there are; this, that, these, and those

A 1 there's a bus stop
2 there's another bus
3 is there a supermarket
4 there was a shop
5 there are four or five good supermarkets
6 is there a laundrette
7 is there anything
8 there isn't anything
9 there are two lectures
Hi Glenn,
How are you? Are you looking forward to Christmas? I know that / are lots of things to do, but it's fun, isn't it? We had our Christmas lunch at work today, and / were thirty five of us in a very small Italian restaurant! Then I went shopping, but I didn't buy many presents, because / were thousands of people on Oxford Street. Anyway, / are only six days left until Christmas now. The kids will be excited this weekend. Perhaps I'll take them to the cinema – / are one or two new Christmas films at the moment. Do you want to bring your two boys if we go to something? Let me know. Bye for now!

WORD FOCUS 1 omelette 2 chillies 3 sauce 4 herbs 5 garlic

22 Countable and uncountable nouns

A 1 piece 3 cup; spoonfuls
2 packet 4 slices
B 1 traffic 3 advice 5 petrol
2 rain 4 ice 6 luggage
C 1 a 7 toast 13 homework
2 any 8 – 14 –
3 the 9 pieces 15 snow
4 A 10 coffees 16 the
5 bread 11 some
6 any 12 some

D 1 many 3 much 5 much
2 much 4 many 6 many
E 1 many 4 much 7 a lot of
2 a lot of 5 much 8
3 a lot of 6 many 9
F 1 a 6 some 11 many
2 a lot of 7 some 12 a lot of
3 some 8 The 13 a
4 any 9 a 14 some
5 much 10 some

23 Pronouns and possessives

A 1 he 4 him 7 she
2 her 5 She 8 her
3 them 6 We 9 They
B 1 It's 5 It's 9 it
2 it's 6 it 10 It's
3 its 7 us 11 it
4 you 8 me 12 It's
5 that 13 a

C Ladies and gentlemen, can I ask / to sit down for a moment, please? I'd like to talk to / for a minute before you go. Thank you. I hope that / will agree with me that we've had an interesting day. When / look at paintings carefully, you understand more about the people around you, don't you? And as you relax at home tomorrow, perhaps / will think again about some of the beautiful paintings you've studied today. After all, paintings tell you stories about yourselves, your friends and your families. I want to ask you, before / go, to look at one final painting, one of my favourites. What do / think about when / see it? Look at this successful man. Look at the flowers. What do / see? I won't give you the answers. I don't have the answers, anyway. But isn't it true that when you get older, / understand that some things are important, and some things aren't important? Thank / for coming.

D 1 her 5 my 9 your
2 Her 6 their 10 your
3 your 7 our
4 your 8 his

E 1 my 5 your 9 his
2 yours 6 my 10 hers
3 mine 7 yours 11 your
4 my 8 mine

142 | Answer key
Hi Nora,
Tom left this morning but her his books are still here! I'll text him tomorrow. I asked [her] Emily for hers her key to the flat. But I'm not sure if the blue cups in the kitchen are ours our cups or theirs – you forget these things when he you live with people for a long time, don't you? By the way, your Mum rang this morning. She's going to visit we us at the weekend. Is it sunny in Mumbai? I don't know what time he it is in India, but I'm going to bed here! Bye!

Hi Brian,
Thanks for your message. It's it's Monday morning in Mumbai. I've just washed the my hair, and I'm looking out of the window. There's a small bird in the hotel garden, and it's singing an Indian song! Anyway, I'm travelling to Delhi later today, it's about two hours by plane. The name of mine my hotel in Delhi is The Metropolitan. I hope things are OK now at the flat. Did you text Tom? I think some of those books are my mine, actually. And the blue cups are our ours! Your sister gave them to us. And is my mother arriving on Friday or Saturday? Bye for now!

24 Possessives (2)

A 1 Sabino's shoes  5 men's toilets
  2 Lucas's coat  6 Thomas's cup
  3 your sister's sandwich  7 children's coats
  4 boys' football

WORD FOCUS A newsagent's  B greengrocer's
C baker's  D optician's  E butcher's  F chemist's
G florist's

B 1 baker's  3 chemist's  5 butcher's
  2 newsagent's  4 optician's

C Turkey's Prime Minister arrives in Uganda at the beginning of the Africa Trade Talks
After today's meeting, Shell's Chief Executive refuses to answer questions from journalists. Film star says that the Government's idea for a new airport is wrong
A small plane lands on the top of a mountain in Peru to help three Australian tourists.
No tickets left for next month's concerts by the Philadelphia Orchestra at New York's Carnegie Hall

D 1 friends of mine  4 flatmate of hers
  2 friend of my Dad's  5 colleague of Paul's
  3 schoolfriend of ours  6 a good idea of mine

WORD FOCUS 1 a pearl necklace  2 a diamond ring
  3 a gold bracelet  4 an earring  5 a gold ring

E 1  6  
  2 yesterday's evening news  7
  3 guests' coats  8 next month's big sale
  4  9 London's number one
  5 friend of mine

25 Adjectives

A(i) Hi Milly, I can come round to your house in the evening, but I'm shopping during the day. to. I'm looking for a white jacket to wear to wear with my blue and green dress at Julie's wedding. I also want two square Japanese plates, some red roses, a small, round lamp, and a short yellow skirt for my holiday. It's a long list, isn't it? I'd better go! See you later, Kate.

(ii) Colour adjectives: white blue green red yellow
Size adjectives: small short long
Shape adjectives: square round

WORD FOCUS 1 high  2 wide  3 huge  4 fat
  5 thin  6 tall  7 short

B 1 blue and red  4 huge house  7 yellow dress
  2 tall  5 high  8 green table
  3 long blonde  6 tiny black and
C Wouldn't you like to live in a nice town with two beautiful small parks and a huge round lake? In our new town the trees are tall, and the streets are wide. Make a journey to Springville. We'll give you a big welcome when you arrive.

D 1. Scottish
2. wonderful
3. horrid
4. easy
5. Portugal

E 1. tall
2. Welsh
3. beautiful
4. old
5. silver

F 1. seems
2. sounds
3. smells
4. look
5. feels
6. looks

26 Comparative and superlative adjectives

A 1. cheaper
2. heavier
3. lighter
4. wider
5. bigger
6. thinner
7. more powerful
8. faster
9. more expensive
10. better

B 1. more famous
2. noisier
3. wetter
4. older
5. busier
6. more
7. smaller
8. more beautiful
9. friendlier
10. richer
11. cleaner
12. more interesting

C 1. He's worse than
2. He's fatter
3. Mr Samson's is better
4. he's more intelligent
5. It is more difficult than
6. I think I'm luckier
7. am I prettier than
8. You're sillier than
9. You're hungrier than
10. it's colder

D 1. best
2. biggest
3. most beautiful
4. warmest
5. sunniest
6. most expensive
7. most peaceful
8. nicest
9. most famous

E 1. friendlier
2. than
3. nearer
4. ever
5. most
6. of
7. expensive
8. the
9. in

F 1. strongest
2. better
3. tallest
4. weaker
5. more difficult
6. youngest
7. best
8. older
9. worst
10. best

27 Adverbs of manner

A 1. quietly
2. correctly
3. heavily
4. carefully
5. properly
6. nicely

B 1. correctly
2. slowly
3. quietly
4. politely
5. beautifully

C ... We walked quickly into the town centre, and I took them to the market. We had a really good time there. Then we walked slowly to the cathedral. But there was one problem in the cathedral. One of the tourists asked a question loudly, and a tall woman said something angrily. But it was OK in the end. We had a good visit. Unfortunately, it rained heavily on the way back to the bus station, but most of the group had umbrellas!

D ... She plays the piano very well, too. I'm not very good at music, as you know, but I can cook quite well, and I can paint well, so I'm lucky, aren't I? Anyway, do you want to meet later today? I don't really want to go to Sammy's party this evening. I didn't sleep very well last night, so I feel tired today. We could go to that new Japanese restaurant on Dean Street. Greg says that it's doing well. Hope to hear from you later.

E 1. fast
2. harder
3. hard
4. early
5. fast
6. late
7. early

F BEN There's a skiing holiday here for two in Switzerland for £50, if we leave early in the morning.

BEN Yes, it snowed hard last week in Austria and Switzerland.

CANDY Can we pack quickly enough? It's nine o'clock already.

BEN I think so. But there is one problem. I ski very badly, I'm afraid.

CANDY Oh. Well, there will be a ski school. I'm sure you'll learn fast.

CANDY You have to move correctly. That's the important thing.

BEN And you have to turn slowly, don't you?
28 Adverbs of degree

1 My new colleague Simon is very friendly
2 I was late for a really important meeting
3 I really need another coffee
4 She was very angry
5 I really love weekends
6 it's got to be very cheap
7 I really hope that you find one
8 I was fairly lucky
9 I got a flat quite quickly
10 He's pretty funny
11 I quite like the food here
12 the bus service is quite good
13 Our teachers are fairly young
14 and it's pretty cold here
15 but they were quite expensive
16 Sure. August would be quite/very good, I think.
17 No, that's late, Charlie. It's a summer car, I know, but
18 consumers buy cars fairly/really early.
19 Alright, but that's pretty/very soon. We need to finish
20 the TV ad.
21 I saw the idea for the advert yesterday, Charlie. It's
22 quite/very serious, isn't it?
23 Sure, they'll remember it, Charlie. It's fairly/very
24 beautiful.
25 But it's also really/pretty sad. My question is: do we want
26 a sad ad?
27 But we've got Sam Taylor in the ad. He's quite/really
28 famous!
29 George is right. Charlie, I'd like you and George to work
30 together on this. Is that OK? I think you could be fairly/very
31 special together. What do you think?

F MAN First of all, it’s quite a friendly place, in fact. For
example, there are quite a lot of cafés where
people go with colleagues for coffee, lunch etc.
That's very nice.

WOMAN And I suppose you see quite a lot of famous
people. The headquarters building of the BBC is
fairly close to Oxford Circus.

MAN Yes, but I'm more interested in the shops.
They're quite expensive, but can get any new
CD or DVD immediately!

WOMAN So are there any problems here?

MAN Yes. The underground is really busy in the
morning, but if you drive to work, it's pretty
hard to find a parking space! Sometimes I arrive
very early at work, but it's still fairly busy.

WOMAN Well, thanks very much for your time.

29 Prepositions

A 1 at 3 in 5 on
2 on 4 in 6 in

B 1 at the office 4 at the newsagent's
time
2 at the airport 5 in bed
3 at the dentist's

C 1 under 4 on 7 in
2 in 5 in
3 above 6 at

D Hi Alex,
Can we meet today? I'm flying to Mumbai on Friday, and I'd
like to talk to you about the trip. Who did you meet when
you went there on in May last year? My trip to Mumbai
is quite short. I'll be back on Thursday in next week. I'm
trying to fix some meetings at in the moment, but I need
your help! Anyway, I'm in a meeting on this morning until
from ten till eleven, but we could meet on at lunch, if you
like. I'm going to visit our Bristol office in this afternoon, so
could we have an early lunch at in twelve o'clock perhaps?
If that's not possible, maybe we could meet on in the
evening? I hope to hear from you soon.

E 1 in 6 at 11 at
2 in 7 in 12 in
3 at 8 on 13 under
4 till 9 at 14 above
5 behind 10 in 15 at

F 1 on 5 in 9 on
2 in 6 under 10 on
3 until 7 at 11 on
4 at 8 from 12 at
30 Conjunctions

A Hi Linda,
I've just got back from Scotland. It was fun, but it was also very tiring! It rained every day, of course, and the mountains were beautiful. We camped near in the Highlands near Inverness. The kids loved the campsite, but it was pretty cold at night! We bought most of our food at the campsite shop. It took a long time to get our meals ready in the evening, but they tasted delicious. After dinner the kids played games, and I read my book. I'm sure we'll return to the campsite one day, but next time we'll go in August, not April!
Best wishes, Maggie

B
1 or a cup 3 or a TV 5 or read a
2 or any sugar 4 or a quiz

C Our kids need to eat healthy food, but we know they often prefer burgers, pizzas and chips. Experts say that we should all – kids and adults – eat five portions of fruit or vegetables every day, if we can. This may be a good idea, but what do we do when our kids say 'no'? That's the question. You can give your kid a piece of fruit – a banana or an apple or a pear – to take to school, but you won't be there at lunchtime! Last week I put an apple in my son's lunch box every day, and he took it to school, but then he brought it home again, and said, 'I wasn't hungry, Mum.' If you've got any good ideas, write to me or email me, and we'll put your letter in the magazine.

D 1 and 5 but
2 but 6 and
3 or 7 and
4 and 8 and

E 1 so 3 because 5 Because
2 so 4 so 6 so

F 1 I'm going to a wedding.
2 I could work on Sunday afternoon.
3 her mother is ill.
4 I need to work in the library on Thursday.
5 you could leave early then.
6 I'm sure we'll sell lots of them.
7 we'll close the shop for tonight.

G 1 and 5 but 9 because
2 so 6 and 10 and
3 but 7 so
4 because 8 or

146 | Answer key
01 Be: Present simple
I'm Daniel and I'm from Frankfurt. I'm 30 years old and I'm a doctor. What's your job? My sister is younger than me and she's a teacher. Our parents are from Munich. Munich is in the south of Germany. Their house is a lovely old building and they are happy to live there. It's a beautiful day here today in Frankfurt, but it's cold. Is it sunny where you are?
Best wishes,
Daniel

02 Present simple
1 speak 3 go 5 love
2 play 4 eat 6 don't like
My friend Carlos comes from Burgos in the north of Spain. He speaks Spanish and English. He goes to the gym every week, and he buys two or three new CDs at the weekends. He sometimes goes skiing in the Pyrenees. He likes pizzas and pop concerts, but he doesn't like homework.

03 Present continuous
MIKE Dina? It's Mike here. What are you doing?
DINA I'm sitting in the garden. What about you?
MIKE I'm listening to a CD. Is Dan in?
DINA No, he's spending the weekend in Scotland.
MIKE How is he, anyway?
DINA He's OK, but he's working too hard. How are you?
MIKE Not bad, thanks. I'm enjoying life at college. And you?
DINA Fine. I'm learning French again, but it isn't easy.

04 Present simple and present continuous
Hi Mark!
I come from Bangkok. I live with my parents, and I teach English in a local school. I play basketball and tennis at the weekends, and I cook Thai food for my friends every week. My parents are visiting my grandmother in the north of Thailand at the moment, so I'm looking after myself. I'm learning to drive this year. I like reading and I love swimming in the sea, but I don't like English grammar!
Best wishes, Bo

05 Present simple and present continuous questions
- When does Buckingham Palace open in the morning?
- Have you got any information about the Tower of London?
- Where is the Globe Theatre, please?
- Does the British Museum open every day?
- Have you got a map of the City of London?
- Does the underground go to Hampton Court Palace?

06 Past simple
1 I got up early on Saturday morning, but I didn't do very much. In the afternoon, I went into town. I met a couple of friends, and we did some shopping. We didn't buy very much, but we had a good time. In the evening, I saw a film at our local cinema. Afterwards, we had a pizza and I took a taxi home. On Sunday morning, I played football in the park. In the afternoon, I did some work for college, and then I watched TV for a few hours.
In 2005, I visited my brother in America. First, I flew to Seattle. Then my brother and I travelled together to California. We spent a week in Los Angeles. Then we drove to the Grand Canyon. It was fantastic! We camped for a few days in the Rocky Mountains. Afterwards, we flew from Denver to New York, and we met some friends there. They showed us the Statue of Liberty and Macey's and Central Park and all those things. Finally, I took the plane back to London, and my brother returned to Seattle.
2 Where were you born?
Did you write stories at school?
Did you go to university?
What did you study?
What did you do after university?
When did you write your first book?
Was your first book successful?

07 Past continuous
Tuesday 24 July:
I went to work by bus. While I was walking along Oxford Street on the way to the office, I met a colleague, Bill, and we had breakfast together. I was working hard on the computer all morning, so at lunchtime I went for a walk in Regent's Park. It was a sunny day. People were sitting on the grass. In the afternoon, I went to two long meetings. I was talking to Bill at the end of the second meeting when my brother rang. He said he was in London for two days on business. We had a meal together in the evening.
08 Present perfect
- I've had four cups of coffee.
- I've been to the supermarket.
- I've spoken to my brother on the phone.
- I've never been to Morocco.
- I've never played golf.
- I haven't swum in the Red Sea.
- Roger Federer has won Wimbledon again.
- It has rained every day.
- The new Prime Minister has answered questions in Parliament.
- Have you ever made a film in London?
- Have you ever met Brad Pitt?
- Have you ever kissed Julia Roberts?

09 Past simple and present perfect
Dear Sir/Madam,
I'm interested in becoming a Saturday assistant at 'Coffee Time.' I've never worked in a coffee shop, but I was a waiter in a restaurant in Italy last summer, and I cleaned tables, too. I also worked in a clothes shop two years ago on Oxford Street in London. I've studied English for six years, and I've lived in London for three months. I started my English course two months ago at the Shakespeare School of English, and I've made good progress. Last week I passed my class test with 80%. I enjoy talking and listening to customers.
I look forward to hearing from you.
Yours faithfully,

10 The future with going to
Hi Christine,
Thanks for your message. My weekend is quite busy. On Saturday morning, I'm going to go into town. I want to buy some new CDs. I'm going to meet Steve at lunchtime, and we're going to play tennis in the afternoon. I'm not going to go out on Saturday night, but I'm going to take the train to Brighton on Sunday morning. My girlfriend and I are going to spend the day by the sea. It's going to be a good weekend! Are you going to work on Saturday as usual? Are you going to see Mike on Saturday evening? Email me again soon!
Dave

11 The future with will and shall
MATT Di? It's Mike here. Shall we go out tonight?
DI Sure. We had a meal last week, so shall we go to the cinema this time?
MATT OK. What film shall we see?
DI Well, I think the new film with Kiefer Sutherland will be good.
MATT Great. When does the film start?
DI I don't know. I'll phone the cinema, and call you back.
MATT Good. Do you think the cinema will be busy?
DI Perhaps. Shall I book tickets on the phone?
MATT I think that's a good idea.
DI OK. I'll talk to you again in a moment.
MATT Fine. Bye!

12 Questions
WHAT What sort of books do you like?
WHAT What do you do on Saturday nights?
WHAT What sort of job do you do?
HOW How often do you play sports?
HOW How far do you travel to work?
HOW How many books do you read every month?
WHERE Where are you going this morning?
WHERE Where do you do your shopping?
WHERE Where do you go on holiday?
WHEN When do you normally get up?
WHEN When do you finish work?
WHEN When do you go on holiday?

13 Can
Dear Mr Spurling,
I would like to apply for the post of Student Assistant. I can swim and I can play football, tennis and basketball. I can also sing one or two English songs. I can't dance, but I can play the guitar. I often go for long walks with friends in the countryside, and I can tell the names of many flowers and trees. I can also drive, and I can cook simple meals. Unfortunately, I can't work for you in the last week of July, because I need to finish a university project. Can I start on 1 August? I can work an extra week after the end of the camp, if you need me.
Yours sincerely,
John Smith
14 Could, was able to, managed to
1 • Could I have an alarm call at seven in the morning, please?
• Could I have some chicken sandwiches in my room, please?
• Could I check my email, please?
• Could I reserve a table for three for tomorrow night, please?
• Could I have a swim in the pool, please?
• Could you call me a taxi, please?
2 See B in unit 14.

15 Should
See the second email in exercise E.

16 Must and have to
1 • You must see the famous sights in London, for example, Buckingham Palace and Big Ben.
• You must visit one or two of the historical English cities like Bath, Oxford and York.
• You must spend a few days in Scotland, because it’s a beautiful country.
2 • I have to get up at seven in the morning to go to work, but I don’t have to work late – I normally finish at five.
• I have to take my mother’s dog for a walk every day.
• I don’t have to do any work in the garden, because we live in a flat.
• I have to cook dinner on Friday evenings, but I don’t have to wash up.

17 The imperative
• Visit the big museums - they’re normally free.
• Take a boat trip on the Thames. You’ll get some great views of London!
• Don’t take taxis everywhere, because they’re expensive.
• Try to find a budget hotel on the internet before you arrive.
• Enjoy the parks. Often you can walk through them on your way to a gallery or the shops.
• Don’t forget to buy a travel card. You’ll save money on the tubes and buses.

18 Have got and have; make, do, and get
1 • I’ve got a new computer.
• I’ve got four Metallica CDs.
• I’ve got two brothers.
• I’ve got an aunt in Scotland.
• I’ve got black hair.
• My dad’s got a big nose.
2 • My brother sometimes does the washing-up.
• We have breakfast at 7 a.m.
• I often get an English newspaper.
• My dad is making dinner.
• Steve is having a good time on holiday.
• Maria is doing very well at college.

19 Verb + infinitive
Saturday 15 November:
I tried to go to the gym on Monday, but I got up too late. I’ll try to go on Monday and Wednesday next week. On Tuesday, I bought a book on South America. I’m planning to visit Brazil in the summer. On Wednesday, Sara offered to buy me dinner. (I helped her in her garden last week.) I went to a Portuguese class on Thursday, but it’s difficult to learn a new language in the evening, when you’re tired. On Friday, I was surprised to get an email from my American friend, Stu. He’s coming to England next month.

20 Articles and nouns
1 See exercise B
2 We went to Borough Market yesterday. There were a lot of people there. Josie bought two brown loaves. Then I bought some sandwiches because we were hungry, and Josie bought two pieces of haddock at the fishmonger’s. The woman was very friendly. Finally, I bought some tomatoes and tomatoes at the greengrocer’s. It was a good trip. In the evening we had fish and chips with a tomato salad.

21 There is, there are, this, that, these and those
Hi Matt,
Do you want to do something this evening? There’s a new swimming pool in the town centre. We could go there for an hour. Do you remember that afternoon at the old pool? The water was so cold. I hope this new pool is better. Or we could go to the Café Mozart. There were a lot of people there last night. It was fun. Give me a ring later. Are there any things that you want to do? Bye for now.
Sally
22 Countable and uncountable nouns

‘Hi Sarah! This is Paul here. Thanks for going to the supermarket. We need some milk, and we need two loaves of bread. Also, we haven’t got any apples or oranges, and we haven’t got any rice. And we need some chicken for the weekend, and we haven’t got any pasta! I think that’s everything. See you later.’

23 Pronouns and possessives

Hi Dave,

How are you? It’s raining here in Rome. I’m writing this email on my new laptop. I hope you get it! Gina, one of my best friends, is going to London next week. It’s her first trip to England. Can I give her your phone number? Hers is 07896 456321. By the way, have you seen a pair of brown gloves? If you have, they’re mine! I’m sure I left them in your house in December. Bye for now!

Silvano

24 Possessives (2)

Hi Phoebe,

I hope you’re well. An old schoolfriend of mine is visiting me this next week. We’re going to borrow my sister’s car and drive to a colleague’s flat by the sea. I think it will be nice. Then, next month my brother and I are flying to my parents’ house in France. They bought it last year. My brother’s new girlfriend is coming, too. Anyway, that’s all for now. I hope to hear your news soon!

25 Adjectives

Dear Donna,

I’m staying in a great little hotel in Portugal. The sun feels fantastic after the rain in Manchester. There’s a friendly Spanish couple in the room next to me. We had a nice meal together yesterday evening. You would love it here – you can buy silver and gold jewellery at the market on Tuesdays and Fridays.

See you soon!

Frances

26 Comparative and superlative adjectives

1 Bath is my home town. It’s close to Bristol. Bristol is a much bigger, noisier city, but the centre of Bath is older and prettier. Hundreds of tourists visit Bath in the summer.

2 The Lake District is one of the most beautiful parts of the UK. It’s the best place for nice, long walks near lakes and mountains. August is the busiest time, so it’s better to visit in June, for example, or September. The prettiest little town is Ambleside, in my opinion. It’s close to Lake Windermere, the biggest of the lakes.

27 Adverbs of manner

1 • I can swim well.
   • I can play the piano well.
   • I cook quite well.
   • I write essays quite well.
   • I don’t speak Spanish very well.
   • I can’t sing or dance very well.

2 • My brother works very hard for his company.
   • My friend Mike eats noisily.
   • My uncle talks very quietly.
   • My teacher speaks very clearly.

28 Adverbs of degree

See exercise E for an example.

29 Prepositions

Hi Tony,

Could we meet soon? I can’t meet today. I’m the only person in the office. Dave is in hospital, and Brenda is at home, because her son is ill. Pete is in New York at a conference. Sally is at college. She studies business management one day every week. So could we meet tomorrow? I’m free in the afternoon. Shall we meet at three o’clock? I hope to hear from you soon.

30 Conjunctions

Dear Ms Brown,

I would like to apply for the post of assistant for your Summer School. I’m twenty-two years old, and I live in Spain. I’m looking for an interesting and useful summer job before I start work for a travel company in September. I will finish university in June this year. I am studying languages (French, English and Italian) because I want to work in different countries during my career. I have a driving licence, and I can use computers. I haven’t done many jobs, but I have worked for a travel agent’s in Madrid as part of my university course. I’ve been to Britain many times, so I believe I can help your students with their trips. I am happy, of course, to send you my CV or references from my university. Best wishes,

Carmen Nieto
Index

A
78-9, 86-9 with adverb of degree 112
before there + be 82
or an 78-9 with countable nouns 86
or no article 86, 92
or the 78-9
bit + comparative adjective 102
tiny + comparative adjective 102
lot + comparative adjective 102
lot of 88, 112
after there + be 82
piece of 86
ability can 50-3
could 54-7
with well 108
able was able to 54-7
above 114
adjectives 98-105
be + 4, 100
colour 98
comparative 102, 130
form ing adverbs from 106, 108, 130
How? 46
irregular 102, 104
it's + adjective + infinitive 76
listed with and 98
nationality 100
order of 98-101
possessive 92
shape 98
size 98
superlative 104, 130
to describe materials 100
adverbs 106-13
degree 110-13
forming from adjectives 106, 108, 130
frequency 6, 16, 32, 36
How? 46
manner 106-9
order in sentence 6, 16, 32, 36, 106
time 108
advice 58-61, 68
ago 22, 36
agree 74, 90
am 2, 20
an 78-9, 86
with adverb of degree 112
after there + be 82
or no article 86, 92
and 118
with adjectives 98
answers, short 48
any 86
after there + be 82
anything, with do 72
apostrophes (' ) 94-7
for time 94
without a noun 94
are 2, 20
aren't 2
articles 78-81
with adverbs of degree 112
at place 36, 114
time 14, 16, 36, 116
at the moment 12, 14, 16
at the weekend 6, 16, 36
badly, with do 72
be 2-5, 129
+ adjective 4, 100
+ adjective + infinitive 76
+ noun 4
in continuous tenses 2
for introductions 2
for location 2
negative 2, 24
for occupations 2
Past Simple forms 22
Present Simple forms 2-5
questions 4-5, 20-1, 24, 46
for saying where you are from 2
short forms 2, 38
there + 4, 82-5
for the weather 2
be going to 38-41
because 120
been 32
begin 74, 129
behind 114
belong to 90
best 104
better 102
but 118

C
50-3
ability 50-3
negative 50
possibility 50-3
questions 50
requests, offers and permission 52-3
with see, hear, smell 50
cannot 50
can't 50
carefully 106
certainty 40, 42
comma
with conjunctions 118, 120
in sentences with while or when 28
to separate adjectives 98
correlations 98, 118-21
could 54-7
ability in the past 54-7
questions with 54
couldn't 54-7
countable nouns 86-9

d
74
decide 74
decisions 38-41, 42-5, 74
description
adjectives for 98, 100
adverbs 106, 112
be + noun or adjective 4, 76
with can 50
Past Simple for 22
using Past Continuous 26
did/didn't
with Past Simple 24-5
in questions 18-21, 24-5, 46
direct object 106
do 8, 18, 24, 46, 72-3
negative 8, 64, 68
in Present Simple 8, 18
questions 18-21
with something, nothing, anything
and everything 72
with well and badly 72
do not 8, 64, 68
do well 108
does 8, 18
doesn't 8-9, 64
done 30
don't 8-9, 64, 68
don't have to 64
E

early 108
easily 106
emphasis 32, 110
ever
   after superlative adjective 104
   and Present Perfect 32, 34, 36
every
   116
everything, with do 72

F

facts, talking about 6, 14, 100
fairly 110, 112
farthest 104
fast 108
feelings
   be + adjective 4, 100
   describing 76
   Present Simple for 16
forget 74, 129
from 116
from...to/until 116
Future
   with going to 38-41
   intentions 38-9, 42-5
   negative 38, 40
   offers 42-5
   predictions 40-1, 42-5
   questions 38, 40
   with will and shall 42-5

G

get 72-3, 129
go 38, 129
   and going to 38
go and ...+ verb 118
going to 38-41
gone 32
'Goodbye', informal 42, 70
got, have got 70-2

H

hard 108
has 6
   in Present Perfect 30-3
hate 12, 26
   and Present Simple 14, 16
have 6, 129
   and have got 70-3
   Present Continuous 70
   in Present Perfect 30-3
   Present Simple forms 6
   questions with 46
have got
   and have 70-3
   negative 70
have got to 62
have to
   + verb 62
   and must 62-5
   negative 64
   questions 64
he 90
   + verb forms 2, 6
he is 2
her 90, 92
hers 92
his 92
history 22, 24, 34, 36
hobbies 6, 14
hope 74
How? 46
   + adjective/adverb 46
   + be 4, 46
How far? 46
How many? 46
How much? 46
   + do/does 18
How often? 46
I

I 90
   instead of you for advice 58
I am 2
I'll 42
I'll see you later 42
I'm 2
   + adjective + infinitive 76
I'm not 2
I'm sure 42
imperative 66-9
   negative with don't 68
   to give instructions 68
in
   place 36, 114
   with superlative adjective 104
   time 6, 116
in the morning 6
in the summer 6, 16, 36
infinitive 74-7, 131
don't/do not or does/doesn't
   before the 8
it's + adjective + 76
   negative 8, 131
to + 74-7
   use after certain verbs 74
   verb + 74-7
   without to 66
informality, short forms 2, 8, 38, 42, 50, 62
information
   Past Simple for 34
   simple questions for 18, 46, 48
-ing forms 128
   of Past Continuous 26, 128
   of Present Continuous 10, 128
   questions 20-1
instructions 68
   intentions 38-41, 42-5
   'interruptions', describing 28
   introductions 2
irregular verbs
   past participles 30, 129
   Past Simple forms 22, 129
is 2, 20
Is there? 82
isn't 2
it 90, 92
   + verb forms 2, 6
it is 2, 76
it was 76
it will/it'll 76
it's 2, 30, 76, 92
its 92
   compared with it's 92
I've 30
J

just, and Present Perfect 30, 34, 36
K

know 12, 26
   and Present Simple 8, 14, 16
L

last week/month/year 22, 36
late 108
learn 74, 129
like 8, 12, 26
   and Present Simple 14, 16
long-term actions, Present
   Simple for 14-17
lots of 82
love 12, 26
   and Present Simple 14, 16
object, direct 106
occupations 2
of
+ possessive pronouns 96
after superlative adjective 104
not an apostrophe 94
off 114
offer 74
offers 74
with can 52-3
Future 42-5
imperative 66
with or 118
with some 86
often 14, 16, 46
on
place 36, 112
time 6, 14, 16, 116
teach 114
one/ones, with this, that, these, those 84
opinion 76
adjectives for 100
questions 42, 60-1
or 118
in negative sentences 118
our 92
ours 92, 96

parts of the body 92
Past Continuous 26-9
for actions in progress in the past 26
description in 26, 28
forms with was/were 26
negative 26
and Past Simple 28-9
questions 26
verbs which don't use the 26
past participle
Irregular verbs 30, 129
in Present Perfect 30-3
regular verbs 30, 128
Past Simple 22-5, 131
be 22
describing interruptions 28
with did/didn't 24-5
for finished past actions 22, 34, 36
forms 22, 128
Irregular verbs 22, 129
negative 24-5, 131
and Past Continuous 28-9
and Present Perfect 34-7
questions 24-5, 131
for stories and history 22, 34
permission 52-3

place
expressions 36, 46
prepositions of 114
plan 4
plans or decisions 38-41, 42-5, 58, 71, 84
please
and imperative 56
not used with offers 52
politeness
with could 54
imperative not used for 66
with shall 44
short answers 48
possessions
adjectives 92
have got 70
pronouns 92, 96
's and s' 94-7
Whose? 48
possibility
can 50-3
with will 42
predictions
with going to 40-1
with will or shall 42-5
prepositions 114-17
of place 114
of time 16
verbs + and object pronouns 90
Present Continuous 10-13, 131
-ing form 10, 128
expressions with the 12
full and short forms 10, 12
have 70
negative 12-13, 131
and Present Simple 14-21
questions 18-21, 131
for saying how things are different
from normal 16
for slow changes 12, 14
for telling people so that they say
something in response 10, 14
for temporary actions 14-15
for things happening 'around now' 12,
14
for things happening now 10, 14
verbs not used in the 12
Present Perfect 30-7, 131
full and short forms 30
negative 32, 131
and Present Simple 34-7
questions 32, 131
uses of 30, 32, 34, 36

Index | 153
R
really 110, 112
reasons 46, 120
refuse 74
regular verbs
past participle 30, 128
Past Simple forms 22, 128
Present Simple forms 6, 127
remember 74
requests 52-3
with a/an and some 86
with could 54
results 120
right 112
routines 14, 16, 46, 116
rules
with can 52
with must 62
S
s' and 's 94-7
See you later 42
sentences
joining ideas in 118
subject and verb 118
shall 44-5
she 90
+ verb forms 2, 6
she is 2
she's 2, 30
short forms, informal 2, 8, 38, 42, 50, 62
should 58-61
questions 60-1
think before 60
shouldn't 58-61
so 120
so much/many 88
some 80, 86
after there + be 82
in questions 86
some friends of mine 96
something, with do 72
sometimes 6, 14, 16
spelling
changes to -ed form 22, 30
rules for verbs and nouns 6
start 74
story-telling
Past Continuous in 26
Past Simple for 22, 34
subject 118
suggestions
with could 54
imperative 66
with or 118
with shall 44
T
temporary actions, Present Continuous for 14-15
than + comparative adjectives 102
that 84-5
and those 84
That's right 84
the 78-9, 86
or a/an 78-9
before superlative adjective 104
for musical instruments 78
or no article 92, 114
their 92
theirs 92
tem 90, 92
there 84
there is/are 4, 82-5
there was/were 82
these 84-5
these days 12, 14, 16
they 90
they are 2
they're 2
they've 30
think
and Present Continuous 16
and Present Simple 8, 14, 16
with should 60
with will 42
this 84-5, 116
and these 84
this morning 22, 36
this week/month/year 12, 14, 16, 36
those 84-5
till/’til 116
time
adverbs of 6, 108
asterophes for 94
expressions for a finished 22, 34, 36
expressions of 16-17, 116
phrases 12, 14
prepositions of 116
questions 4, 46
to
+ infinitive 74-7
time 116
today 36
too much/many 88
true 112
try 74
U
uncountable nouns 82, 86-8
under 114
understand 12, 26
and Present Simple 14, 16
until 116
us 90, 92
usually 6, 16

V
verbs 2-45, 118
+ infinitives 74-7
+ prepositions and object pronouns 90
-ing forms 10, 26, 128
after do/does 8, 18
spelling rules 6
tenses 2-45, 131
see also irregular verbs; regular verbs
very 108, 110, 112
very well 108

W
want 12, 26, 74
and Present Simple 14, 16
questions with do/does 18
-warnings 68
was 22, 24, 26-7
was able to 54-7
we 90
we are 2
weather 2, 26, 40, 68, 90
well 108
with do 72, 108
well done 108
went 22
we're 2
were 22, 24, 26
we've 30
What? 48
+ be 4, 20
+ do/does 18
when, with Past Continuous and Past Simple 28
When? 46
+ do/does 18, 24, 46
+ will 42
Where? 46
+ be 4, 20, 46
+ do/does 18
Which? 48
while, with Past Continuous and Past Simple 28
Who? 48
Whose? 48
Why? 46
will 42-5
word order
adjectives 98-101
adverbs of manner 106
frequency adverbs 6, 16, 32, 36
in questions 4, 20-1
worst 104

Y
yes/no questions 4, 46, 48
you 90
for groups or for general application 90
you are 2
you should/shouldn't 58
your 92
you're 2
yours 92, 96
you've 30
Learn and practise grammar in context

Each unit of Oxford Living GRAMMAR explains how the grammar works and the situations where you use it. The exercises use real-life situations to practise the grammar in context.

Oxford Living GRAMMAR helps you use grammar with confidence:
- Understand grammar and when to use it
- Practise using grammar in real situations
- Have plenty of practice with 4-page units for each grammar topic
- Learn new words and expressions with the Word focus boxes
- Use and review what you have learned in the Over to you exercises
- Be prepared for the KET and PET exams

PLUS interactive Oxford Living GRAMMAR Context-Plus+ CD-ROM helps you:
- Develop and take part in your own dialogues using the listening mazes
- Create your own reading texts using the reading mazes
- Practise your grammar with more exercises for each grammar topic
- Build your vocabulary with more Word focus exercises
- Review your progress using the tests

Oxford Living GRAMMAR – learn about grammar and when to use it

Elementary
A1+ level (towards KET)

Pre-intermediate
A2 level (KET and towards PET)

Intermediate
B1 level (PET and towards FCE)
## Contents

### Introduction

**Present tenses**

**01 Be: Present simple**
- I am; I'm not
- Are you hungry?; What time is it?

**02 Present simple**
- I work; he studies
- We don't know; he doesn't remember

**03 Present continuous**
- I am waiting; he's making
- It is not working; we're not coming

**04 Present simple and present continuous**
- Long-term or temporary actions
- Expressions of time

**05 Present simple and present continuous questions**
- Do you understand?; When does the library open?
- Is it snowing?; What are they doing?

### Past and perfect tenses

**06 Past simple**
- I played; he made
- We didn’t go; did they see?

**07 Past continuous**
- I was sitting; we weren’t watching; was he eating?
- Past simple and past continuous

**08 Present perfect**
- I have finished; they’ve left
- He hasn’t arrived; has he gone?; ever, never

**09 Past simple and present perfect**
- I lived or I have lived
- Finished time or just, ever, and never

### Talking about the future

**10 The future with going to**
- Things we have decided to do
- Predictions

**11 The future with will and shall**
- Will: predictions, decisions, and offers
- Shall: suggestions and offers

### Questions

**12 Questions**
- Yes/no questions; where, when, why, how
- What, which, who, whose; short answers

### Modals and other verbs

**13 Can**
- Ability and possibility
- Requests, offers, and permission

**14 Could, was able to, managed to**
- Could: requests, suggestions, and ability in the past
- Couldn’t, was able to, managed to: ability in the past

**15 Should**
- You should eat more fruit
- Should I tell them?

**16 Must and have to**
- I must or I have to
- I mustn't or I don't have to; Do I have to go?

### Verb forms and other structures

**17 The imperative**
- Come in!; Enjoy your holiday!
- Don’t forget!

**18 Have got and have; make, do, and get**
- Have got and have
- Make, do, and get
19 Verb + infinitive
Learn to cook; promise to write
It's easy to learn; I'm happy to help

Articles, nouns, pronouns, and determiners
20 Articles and nouns
A, an or the
Plural nouns (trees; people)
21 There is, there are; this, that, these, and those
There is, there are
This, that, these, and those
22 Countable and uncountable nouns
Countable and uncountable; a, some, any, no
Much, many, and a lot of
23 Pronouns and possessives
Subject and object pronouns (I, me)
Possessives (my, mine)
24 Possessives (2)
's and s' possessive
Some friends of mine

Adjectives and adverbs
25 Adjectives
Red; small; square
Order of adjectives
26 Comparative and superlative adjectives
Comparative adjectives
Superlative adjectives
27 Adverbs of manner
Quickly; easily; carefully
Well; early; fast
28 Adverbs of degree
Very hungry; really quietly
Quite a big cake; a really good book

Prepositions
29 Prepositions
Prepositions of place (at, in, on, above, behind, under)
Prepositions of time (at, in, on, from, to, until)

Building sentences
30 Conjunctions
And; but; or
Because; so

Over to you
Form tables
Answer key
Answer key Over to you
Index